

BSC Programmer's Guide

DC 900-1340I

ProtoGate, Inc.
12225 World Trade Drive, Suite R
San Diego, CA 92128
December 2002

PROTOGATE

Protogate, Inc.
12225 World Trade Drive, Suite R
San Diego, CA 92128
(858) 451-0865

BSC Programmer's Guide
© 2002 Protogate, Inc. All rights reserved
Printed in the United States of America

This document can change without notice. Protogate, Inc. accepts no liability for any errors this document might contain.

Freeway is a trademark of Protogate, Inc.
All other trademarks and trade names are the properties of their respective holders.



Contents

List of Figures	11
List of Tables	13
Preface	17
1 Introduction	25
1.1 Product Overview	25
1.1.1 Freeway Server	25
1.1.2 Embedded ICP	27
1.2 Freeway Client-Server Environment	29
1.2.1 Establishing Freeway Server Internet Addresses	30
1.3 Embedded ICP Environment	30
1.4 Client Operations	30
1.4.1 Defining the DLI and TSI Configuration	30
1.4.2 Opening a Session	31
1.4.3 Exchanging Data with the Remote Application	31
1.4.4 Closing a Session	31
1.5 BSC Product Overview	31
1.5.1 Software Description	32
1.5.2 Hardware Description	32
2 BSC Protocol Summary	33
2.1 BSC 3270 Protocol Implementation	33
2.1.1 3270 Control Station Operation	34
2.1.2 3270 Tributary Station Operation	34
2.1.3 Transmission Codes	34

2.1.4	Messages and Transmission Blocks.	35
2.1.5	BSC 3270 Product Features.	35
2.2	BSC 3270 Access Modes	35
2.3	BSC 2780/3780 Protocol Implementation	38
2.3.1	BSC 2780 Protocol	38
2.3.2	BSC 3780 Protocol	39
2.3.3	Transmission Codes.	40
2.3.4	Messages and Transmission Blocks.	40
2.3.5	BSC 2780/3780 Product Features.	41
2.4	BSC 2780/3780 Access Modes	42
3	BSC 3270 DLI Functions	45
3.1	Summary of DLI Concepts	46
3.1.1	Configuration in the Freeway Environment.	46
3.1.2	Normal versus Raw Operation	47
3.1.3	Blocking versus Non-blocking I/O	48
3.1.4	Buffer Management.	49
3.2	Example BSC 3270 Call Sequences	50
3.3	Overview of DLI Functions for BSC 3270	52
3.3.1	DLI Optional Arguments.	54
3.4	Overview of BSC 3270 Requests using dlWrite	55
3.4.1	Commands using Raw dlWrite.	57
3.4.1.1	Set Translation Table Command.	57
3.4.1.2	Clear Statistics Command	57
3.4.1.3	Set ICP Message Buffer Size Command	58
3.4.1.4	Configure Link Command.	59
3.4.1.5	Start Link Command.	60
3.4.1.6	Stop Link Command	61
3.4.1.7	BSC 3270 Set Poll List Command	62
3.4.1.8	Safe Store Acknowledge Command	64
3.4.1.9	BSC 3270 Specific Poll Command	66
3.4.1.10	Send EOT Command.	67
3.4.1.11	Create Virtual 3270 Devices Command	67
3.4.1.12	Change Virtual 3270 Device Status Command	69
3.4.2	Information Requests using Raw dlWrite	71
3.4.2.1	Request Buffer Report	71

3.4.2.2	Request Configuration Report	72
3.4.2.3	Request Statistics Report.	72
3.4.2.4	Request Status Report	73
3.4.2.5	Request Translation Table Report	75
3.4.2.6	Request Software Version ID	75
3.4.2.7	Request BSC 3270 Poll List	76
3.4.2.8	Request Virtual 3270 Device Status	76
3.4.3	Data Transfer using Raw dlWrite	78
3.4.3.1	Send Normal Data	79
3.4.3.2	Send Transparent Data.	79
3.5	Overview of BSC 3270 Responses using Raw dlRead	80
3.5.1	Normal and Transparent Received Data.	83
3.5.2	BSC 3270 Sense/Status Message	83
3.5.3	Error, Confirmation, and Acknowledgment Responses	83
3.5.4	Reports in Response to dlWrite Information Requests	83
4	BSC 3270 Link Configuration Options	85
4.1	Data Rate Option (1)	88
4.2	Clock Source Option (2)	89
4.2.1	External	89
4.2.2	Internal	89
4.3	Reply Timer Length Option (3).	90
4.4	Number of Leading SYN Characters Option (4).	90
4.5	Protocol Option (5)	90
4.6	Parity Option (6)	91
4.7	Character Set Option (7)	91
4.8	Transmission Block Size Option (8)	92
4.9	Data Translation Option (10).	93
4.10	Station Priority Option (11)	93
4.11	Conversational Mode Option (13)	94
4.12	Retry Limit Option (14).	94
4.13	Poll List Delay Option (15)	95
4.14	Modem Control Option (16)	95
4.14.1	RTS Signal	95
4.14.2	DSR Signal	96
4.14.3	DCD Signal	96

4.15	Safe Store Option (17)	96
4.16	Station ID Option (18)	97
4.17	Message Blocking Option (19)	97
4.17.1	Blocking Disabled.	97
4.17.2	Data Blocking	98
4.17.3	3270 Command Blocking.	98
4.18	Block Checking Option (20)	99
4.19	Queue Limit Option (21)	100
4.20	Read Session Option (23)	101
4.21	Interpoll Delay Option (25)	101
4.22	3270 Text Addressing Option (27)	102
4.23	DSR/DCD Delay Option (30)	103
4.24	Electrical Interface Option (40)	104
5	BSC 2780/3780 DLI Functions	105
5.1	Summary of DLI Concepts	106
5.1.1	Configuration in the Freeway Environment.	106
5.1.2	Normal versus Raw Operation	107
5.1.3	Blocking versus Non-blocking I/O	108
5.1.4	Buffer Management.	109
5.2	Example BSC 2780/3780 Call Sequences	110
5.3	Overview of DLI Functions for BSC 2780/3780	112
5.3.1	DLI Optional Arguments.	114
5.4	Overview of BSC 2780/3780 Requests using dlWrite.	115
5.4.1	Commands using Raw dlWrite.	118
5.4.1.1	Set Translation Table Command.	118
5.4.1.2	Clear Statistics Command	118
5.4.1.3	Set ICP Message Buffer Size Command	119
5.4.1.4	Configure Link Command.	120
5.4.1.5	Start Link Command.	121
5.4.1.6	Stop Link Command	122
5.4.1.7	Safe Store Acknowledge Command	123
5.4.1.8	Send EOT Command.	125
5.4.1.9	BSC 2780/3780 Send Disconnect Command	125
5.4.1.10	BSC 2780/3780 Signon Command	126
5.4.1.11	BSC 2780/3780 Poll Line with No Data Command.	128

5.4.1.12	BSC 2780/3780 Flush Queue Command	130
5.4.1.13	BSC 2780/3780 Autodial Start Command	131
5.4.1.14	BSC 2780/3780 Modem Configuration Command	134
5.4.1.15	BSC 2780/3780 Trace using dlWrite.	136
5.4.2	Information Requests using Raw dlWrite	140
5.4.2.1	Request Buffer Report	140
5.4.2.2	Request Configuration Report	141
5.4.2.3	Request Statistics Report.	141
5.4.2.4	Request Status Report	142
5.4.2.5	Request Translation Table Report	144
5.4.2.6	Request Software Version ID	146
5.4.3	Data Transfer using Raw dlWrite	146
5.4.3.1	Send Normal Data	147
5.4.3.2	Send Transparent Data.	147
5.4.3.3	Transparent 2780 Record Data	148
5.4.3.4	Priority Data	149
5.4.3.5	Header Data	149
5.5	Overview of BSC 2780/3780 Responses using Raw dlRead	150
5.5.1	Received Data.	153
5.5.2	Error, Confirmation, and Acknowledgment Responses	154
5.5.3	Reports in Response to dlWrite Information Requests	154
6	BSC 2780/3780 Link Configuration Options	155
6.1	Data Rate Option (1)	159
6.2	Clock Source Option (2)	159
6.2.1	External	160
6.2.2	Internal	160
6.3	Reply Timer Length Option (3).	160
6.4	Number of Leading SYN Characters Option (4).	161
6.5	Protocol Option (5)	161
6.6	Parity Option (6)	161
6.7	Character Set Option (7)	162
6.7.1	ASCII/LRC-8	163
6.7.2	EBCDIC/CRC-16.	163
6.7.3	ASCII/CRC-16	163
6.7.4	EBCDIC/CCITT-0	163

6.7.5	ASCII/CCITT-0	163
6.8	Transmission Block Size Option (8).	164
6.9	Data Translation Option (10)	165
6.10	Station Priority Option (11).	166
6.11	Space Compression Option (12)	166
6.12	Conversational Mode Option (13)	167
6.13	Retry Limit Option (14)	167
6.14	Wait for Bid Delay Option (15)	168
6.15	Modem Control Option (16)	168
6.15.1	RTS Signal	169
6.15.2	DSR Signal	169
6.15.3	DCD Signal	170
6.16	Safe Store Option (17)	170
6.17	Message Blocking Option (19)	170
6.17.1	Blocking Disabled.	173
6.17.2	Data Blocking	173
6.17.3	BSC 2780/3780 Record Handling	174
6.18	Block Checking Option (20)	175
6.19	Queue Limit Option (21)	175
6.20	EOM Line Control Option (22).	176
6.21	Read Session Option (23)	177
6.22	Alternating ACK Control Option (24)	178
6.23	Line Turnaround Delay Option (25)	178
6.24	TTD/WACK Option (26)	178
6.25	RVI Handling Option (28)	179
6.26	DSR/DCD Delay Option (30)	180
6.27	TTD/WACK Limit Option (31)	181
6.28	Disconnect Timer Length Option (32)	181
6.29	Modem Type Option (35)	182
6.30	Electrical Interface Option (40)	182
6.31	Line Type Option (41)	182
7	BSC Link Configuration Using dlicfg	183
7.1	Configuration Overview.	183
7.2	DLI Session Configuration	188

A	BSC 3270 Line Control Procedures	193
A.1	Control Station Procedures	193
A.1.1	General Poll.	193
A.1.2	Device Selection	194
A.1.3	Specific Poll.	195
A.2	Tributary Station Procedures	195
A.2.1	Normal Mode.	196
A.2.2	Test Mode.	196
A.3	Line Up/Down Reporting.	196
A.4	Virtual Device Procedures	197
A.4.1	Virtual Printer Operation	197
A.4.2	Virtual Display Operation	197
A.4.3	3270 Command Checking	200
A.4.4	BSC 3270 Sense/Status Message	204
A.5	Station Up/Down Reporting	206
A.6	DSR/DCD Up/Down Reporting	206
A.7	Freeway/Line Interface	207
A.8	Modem Control Lines.	207
A.9	Clock Signals.	208
A.10	Idle Line Condition	208
B	BSC 2780/3780 Control Procedures	209
B.1	BSC 2780/3780 Communications Control	209
B.1.1	BSC 2780/3780 Software Initialization	210
B.1.2	Normal Link Start	211
B.1.3	Signon Procedure using BSC 2780/3780 Software Commands	212
B.1.4	Data Reception	216
B.1.5	Normal Data Transmission	217
B.1.6	Priority Data Reception	218
B.1.7	Recoverable Errors In Transmission.	220
B.1.8	Unrecoverable Errors In Transmission	221
B.1.9	Normal Link Stop	223
B.2	DSR/DCD Up/Down Reporting	224
B.3	Freeway/Line Interface	224
B.4	Modem Control Lines.	224
B.5	Clock Signals.	224

B.6	Idle Line Condition	225
C	ASCII Translation Tables	227
D	Error Codes	233
E	BSC Loopback Test Program	237
E.1	Loopback Test Programs.	237
F	BSC Detailed Command and Response Formats	243
F.1	BSC Protocol Processing.	243
F.1.1	Session Attach	243
F.1.2	Set Buffer Size	244
F.1.3	Link Configuration	244
F.1.4	Link Enabling (Bind)	244
F.1.5	Data Transfer	244
F.1.6	Link Disabling (Unbind)	245
F.1.7	Session Detach	245
F.2	Command/Response Header Summary	246
F.3	Response Header Format	257
	Index	259

List of Figures

Figure 1–1:	Freeway Configuration	26
Figure 1–2:	Embedded ICP Configuration	27
Figure 1–3:	A Typical Freeway Server Environment	29
Figure 2–1:	Normal 2780 Text Block.	38
Figure 2–2:	Transparent 2780 Text Block	39
Figure 2–3:	Normal 3780 Text Block.	40
Figure 2–4:	Transparent 3780 Text Block	40
Figure 3–1:	“C” Definition of DLI Optional Arguments Structure	54
Figure 3–2:	Link Configuration Block with Two Options	60
Figure 3–3:	Set Poll List Command Example	63
Figure 3–4:	BSC 3270 Specific Poll Format	66
Figure 3–5:	Example Create Virtual 3270 Devices	68
Figure 3–6:	BSC 3270 Device Status Bits	76
Figure 5–1:	“C” Definition of DLI Optional Arguments Structure	114
Figure 5–2:	Link Configuration Block with Two Options	120
Figure 5–3:	BSC 2780/3780 Link Trace Data Format	137
Figure 5–4:	Client Transparent 2780 Record Format	148
Figure 5–5:	BSC 2780/3780 Modified Transparent 2780 Record Format	149
Figure 6–1:	Transmit with <i>Disabled</i> Message Blocking Option.	171
Figure 6–2:	Transmit with <i>Data Blocking</i> Option	171
Figure 6–3:	Receive with <i>Disabled</i> Message Blocking Option.	172
Figure 6–4:	Receive with <i>Data Blocking</i> Option	172
Figure 7–1:	DLI and TSI Configuration Process	187
Figure 7–2:	Example DLI Configuration File for Two BSC 3270 Links	189
Figure A–1:	General Poll Format	194

Figure A-2:	Device Selection Sequence.	195
Figure A-3:	Normal Operation for Virtual Printer	198
Figure A-4:	Printer Error During Printout.	199
Figure A-5:	Normal Operation of Virtual Display.	200
Figure A-6:	BSC 3270 Command Checking	201
Figure A-7:	RVI Ignored by BSC 3270 Master	202
Figure A-8:	WACK Ignored by BSC 3270 Master	203
Figure A-9:	BSC 3270 Sense/Status Bytes	204
Figure A-10:	BSC 3270 Status Message Format	204
Figure B-1:	Software Initialization Sequence	210
Figure B-2:	Start Link Sequence Using Two Commands	211
Figure B-3:	Signon Procedure (Transmit with Immediate Data)	213
Figure B-4:	Signon Procedure (Transmit with Delayed Data)	214
Figure B-5:	Signon Procedure (Receive)	215
Figure B-6:	Data Reception Sequence	216
Figure B-7:	Normal Data Transmission Sequence.	217
Figure B-8:	Two-message Sequence with Priority Message Interrupt	219
Figure B-9:	Recoverable Error Sequence.	220
Figure B-10:	No Response from the Remote Station	221
Figure B-11:	Transmission Aborted by the Remote Station	222
Figure B-12:	Link Stop Sequence	223

List of Tables

Table 2–1:	BSC 3270 Session Access Modes	36
Table 2–2:	BSC 3270 Access Modes for Various Operations	37
Table 2–3:	BSC 2780/3780 Session Access Modes	43
Table 2–4:	BSC 2780/3780 Access Modes for Various Operations	44
Table 3–1:	DLI Call Sequence for BSC 3270 (Blocking I/O)	50
Table 3–2:	DLI Call Sequence for BSC 3270 (Non-blocking I/O)	51
Table 3–3:	DLI Functions: Syntax and Parameters (Listed in Typical Call Order).	53
Table 3–4:	Categories for BSC 3270 dlWrite Requests	56
Table 3–5:	Device Status Values	69
Table 3–6:	Buffer Report Definition	71
Table 3–7:	BSC 3270 Statistics Report Definition	73
Table 3–8:	Status Report Definition	74
Table 3–9:	BSC 3270 Device Status Conditions and Responses.	77
Table 3–10:	BSC 3270 Response Codes	81
Table 4–1:	BSC 3270 Link Configuration Options and Settings	86
Table 4–2:	Modem Control Option Settings.	96
Table 5–1:	DLI Call Sequence for BSC 2780/3780 (Blocking I/O)	110
Table 5–2:	DLI Call Sequence for BSC 2780/3780 (Non-blocking I/O)	111
Table 5–3:	DLI Functions: Syntax and Parameters (Listed in Typical Call Order).	113
Table 5–4:	Categories for BSC 2780/3780 dlWrite Requests.	116
Table 5–5:	BSC 2780/3780 Error Responses on Poll Failure	129
Table 5–6:	Autodial Start Acknowledge Errors Returned	132
Table 5–7:	Trace Event Numbers	138
Table 5–8:	Buffer Report Definition	140
Table 5–9:	BSC 2780/3780 Statistics Report Definition	141

Table 5–10:	BSC 2780/3780 Status Report Definition.	143
Table 5–11:	Last Event Codes for Link Status Report	145
Table 5–12:	BSC 2780/3780 Response Codes	151
Table 6–1:	BSC 2780/3780 Link Configuration Options and Settings	156
Table 6–2:	Recommended Data Translation Settings	165
Table 6–3:	Modem Control Option Settings	169
Table 7–1:	BSC 3270 ICP Link Parameters and Defaults for Using dlicfg	190
Table 7–2:	BSC 2780/3780 ICP Link Parameters and Defaults for Using dlicfg	191
Table A–1:	Sense/Status Bit Combinations	205
Table A–2:	Condition Changes that Generate Responses to General Polls	205
Table A–3:	EIA-232 Modem Control Lines.	207
Table A–4:	EIA-232 Clock Signals.	208
Table B–1:	EIA-232 Modem Control Lines.	225
Table B–2:	EIA-232 Clock Signals.	226
Table C–1:	ASCII to EBCDIC Translation Table 1	228
Table C–2:	EBCDIC to ASCII Translation Table 1	229
Table C–3:	ASCII to EBCDIC Translation Table 2	230
Table C–4:	EBCDIC to ASCII Translation Table 2	231
Table D–1:	BSC Error Codes	234
Table E–1:	BSC 3270 Loopback Test Programs and Directories.	237
Table E–2:	BSC 3780 Loopback Test Programs and Directories.	238
Table F–1:	Command/Response Codes.	246
Table F–2:	DLI_ICP_CMD_ATTACH Command and Response	247
Table F–3:	DLI_ICP_CMD_DETACH Command and Response	248
Table F–4:	DLI_ICP_CMD_BIND Command and Response	249
Table F–5:	DLI_ICP_CMD_UNBIND Command and Response	250
Table F–6:	DLI_PROT_SET_BUF_SIZE Command and Response	251
Table F–7:	BSC 3270 General Commands and Responses.	252
Table F–8:	BSC 3270 Device Creation and Modification Commands and Responses	253
Table F–9:	BSC 2780/3780 General Commands and Responses.	254
Table F–10:	DLI_PROT_SET_TRANS_TABLE Command and Response	255
Table F–11:	BSC Transmit Data Commands and Response.	256

Table F-12: BSC Receive Data Responses 257



Preface

Purpose of Document

This document describes the operation and programming interface required to use Protogate's Binary Synchronous Communications (BSC) product for Protogate's Freeway communications server or embedded ICP.

Note

In this document, the DLI API interface applies to both a Freeway server or an embedded ICP using DLITE. For the embedded ICP, also refer to the user's guide for your ICP and operating system (for example, the *ICP2432 User's Guide for Windows NT (DLITE Interface)*).

Intended Audience

This document should be read by programmers who are interfacing an application program to a BSC 3270 and/or a BSC 2780/3780 environment. You should understand the data link interface (DLI), as explained in the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide*.

Required Equipment

The BSC product requires the following two major hardware components to operate:

- a Freeway communications server or an embedded ICP that runs the communications software
- a client computer that runs the following:
 - TCP/IP (for a Freeway server)
 - Data link interface (DLI)
 - the user application program

Organization of Document

[Chapter 1](#) is an overview of Freeway and the BSC product.

[Chapter 2](#) summarizes the basic communication protocol formats available on the BSC software package.

[Chapter 3](#) describes how to use the data link interface (DLI) between the client application program and the BSC 3270 communications software running on the Freeway ICP.

[Chapter 4](#) describes the link configuration options available on the BSC 3270 software package.

[Chapter 5](#) describes how to use the data link interface (DLI) between the client application program and the BSC 2780/3780 communications software running on the Freeway ICP.

[Chapter 6](#) describes the link configuration options available on the BSC 2780/3780 software package.

[Chapter 7](#) describes how to configure the BSC link options using the `dlicfg` program.

[Appendix A](#) describes the line control procedures for BSC 3270.

[Appendix B](#) describes the line control procedures for BSC 2780/3780.

[Appendix C](#) contains the ASCII/EBCDIC code translation tables.

[Appendix D](#) describes error handling and lists the error codes.

[Appendix E](#) describes the BSC loopback test program.

[Appendix F](#) gives detailed examples of command and response header formats.

Protogate References

The following documents provide useful supporting information, depending on the customer's particular hardware and software environments. Most documents are available on-line at Protogate's web site, www.protogate.com.

General Product Overviews

- *Freeway 1100 Technical Overview* 25-000-0419
- *ICP2432 Technical Overview* 25-000-0420

Hardware Support

- *Freeway 3100 Hardware Installation Guide* DC 900-2002
- *Freeway 3200 Hardware Installation Guide* DC 900-2003
- *Freeway 3400 Hardware Installation Guide* DC 900-2004
- *Freeway 3600 Hardware Installation Guide* DC 900-2005
- *Freeway 1100/1150 Hardware Installation Guide* DC 900-1370
- *Freeway 2000/4000 Hardware Installation Guide* DC 900-1331
- *Freeway ICP6000R/ICP6000X Hardware Description* DC 900-1020
- *ICP6000(X)/ICP9000(X) Hardware Description and Theory of Operation* DC 900-0408
- *ICP2424 Hardware Description and Theory of Operation* DC 900-1328
- *ICP2432 Hardware Description and Theory of Operation* DC 900-1501
- *ICP2432 Hardware Installation Guide* DC 900-1502
- *ICP2432B Hardware Description and Theory of Operation* DC 900-2006
- *ICP2432B Hardware Installation Guide* DC 900-2009

Freeway Software Installation Support

- *Freeway Server User's Guide* DC 900-1333
- *Freeway Software Release Addendum: Client Platforms* DC 900-1555
- *Getting Started with Freeway 1100/1150* DC 900-1369
- *Getting Started with Freeway 2000/4000* DC 900-1330
- *Loopback Test Procedures* DC 900-1533

Embedded ICP Installation and Programming Support

- *ICP2432 User's Guide for Tru64 UNIX* DC 900-1513
- *ICP2432 User's Guide for OpenVMS Alpha (DLITE Interface)* DC 900-1516
- *ICP2432 User's Guide for Windows NT (DLITE Interface)* DC 900-1514
- *ICP2432 User Guide for Solaris STREAMS* DC 900-1512

Application Program Interface (API) Programming Support

- *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide* DC 900-1385
- *Freeway QIO/SQIO API Reference Guide* DC 900-1355
- *Freeway Server-Resident Application Programmer's Guide* DC 900-1325
- *Freeway Transport Subsystem Interface Reference Guide* DC 900-1386

Socket Interface Programming Support

- *Freeway Client-Server Interface Control Document* DC 900-1303

Toolkit Programming Support

- *OS/Impact Programmer's Guide* DC 900-1030
- *Protocol Software Toolkit Programmer's Guide* DC 900-1338
- *OS/Protogate Programmer Guide* DC 900-2008
- *Protocol Software Toolkit Programmer's Guide (ICP2432B)* DC 900-2007

Protocol Support

- *ADCCP NRM Programmer's Guide* DC 900-1317
- *Asynchronous Wire Service (AWS) Programmer's Guide* DC 900-1324
- *Addendum: Embedded ICP2432 AWS Programmer's Guide* DC 900-1557
- *BSC Programmer's Guide* DC 900-1340

• <i>BSCDEMO User's Guide</i>	DC 900-1349
• <i>BSCTTRAN Programmer's Guide</i>	DC 900-1406
• <i>DDCMP Programmer's Guide</i>	DC 900-1343
• <i>Freeway AUTODIN Programmer's Guide</i>	DC 908-1558
• <i>Freeway FMP Programmer's Guide</i>	DC 900-1339
• <i>Freeway Marketfeed 2000 Programmer's Guide</i>	DC 900-1346
• <i>Freeway MRS Protocol Programmer's Guide</i>	DC 900-1565
• <i>Freeway SIO STD-1300 Programmer's Guide</i>	DC 908-1559
• <i>Freeway SWIFT and CHIPS Programmer's Guide</i>	DC 900-1344
• <i>Military/Government Protocols Programmer's Guide</i>	DC 900-1602
• <i>SIO STD-1200A (Rev. 1) Programmer's Guide</i>	DC 908-1359
• <i>X.25 Call Service API Guide</i>	DC 900-1392
• <i>X.25/HDLC Configuration Guide</i>	DC 900-1345
• <i>X.25 Low-Level Interface</i>	DC 900-1307

Other helpful documents:

- *General Information — Binary Synchronous Communications*, GA27-3004
IBM
- *3274 Control Unit Description and Programmer's Guide*, IBM GA23-0061
- *Component Description: IBM 2780 Data Transmission Terminal*
- *Component Description: IBM 3780 Data Transmission Terminal*

Document Conventions

This document follows the most significant byte first (MSB) and most significant word first (MSW) conventions for bit-numbering and byte-ordering. In all packet transfers between the client applications and the ICPs, the ordering of the byte stream is preserved.

The term “Freeway” refers to any of the Freeway server models (for example, Freeway 500/3100/3200/3400 PCI-bus servers, Freeway 1000 ISA-bus servers, or Freeway 2000/4000/8800 VME-bus servers). References to “Freeway” also may apply to an

embedded ICP product using DLITE (for example, the embedded ICP2432 using DLITE on a Windows NT system).

Physical “ports” on the ICPs are logically referred to as “links.” However, since port and link numbers are usually identical (that is, port 0 is the same as link 0), this document uses the term “link.”

Program code samples are written in the “C” programming language.

Revision History

The revision history of the *BSC Programmer's Guide*, Protogate document DC 900-1340I, is recorded below:

Revision	Release Date	Description
DC 900-1340A	September 1994	Original release
DC 900-1340B	October 1994	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Modify the 3270 text addressing option (Section 4.22)• Modify the Freeway 1000 electrical interface option (Section 4.24)
DC 900-1340C	November 1994	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Minor modifications and updated error codes• Update file names for software release 2.1• Change the usICPStatus field to iICPStatus and change the usProtModifier field to iProtModifier (page 54 and page 114)
DC 900-1340D	February 1995	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Minor modifications• New and updated BSC 2780/3780 options in Chapter 5, Chapter 6 and Chapter 7.
DC 900-1340E	May 1995	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Minor modifications• Modify Line Type option (Section 6.31 on page 182)
DC 900-1340F	January 1996	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Minor modifications throughout document• Add dlControl function to Table 3–3 on page 53 and Table 5–3 on page 113• Add Windows NT to Chapter 7 and Appendix E

Revision	Release Date	Description
DC 900-1340G	April 1998	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Modify Section 1.1 through Section 1.4. • Changes to BSC 3270: minor changes to Section 3.1.2 on page 47 and Section 3.2 on page 50, add <code>dlpErrString</code> function (Table 3–3 on page 53) • Changes to BSC 2780/3780: minor changes to Section 5.1.2 on page 107 and Section 5.2 on page 110, add <code>dlpErrString</code> function (Table 5–3 on page 113) add Wait for Bid Delay option (Section 6.14 on page 168) and Line Turnaround Delay option (Section 6.23 on page 178) • Minor changes to Chapter 7 and Appendix E.
DC 900-1340H	November 1998	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Add <code>dlSyncSelect</code> function (Table 3–3 on page 53). • Add <i>permanent hold with notify</i> EOM line control option (Section 6.20 on page 176 and Table 7–2 on page 191). • Modify Appendix E to support only non-blocking I/O loopback test. • Add Appendix F, “BSC Detailed Command and Response Formats.”
DC 900-1340I	December 2002	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Update contact information for Protogate, Inc. Adjust figures, drawings, and fonts. Add references for Free-way 3x00 and ICP2432B.

Customer Support

If you are having trouble with any Protogate product, call us at (858) 451-0865 Monday through Friday between 8 a.m. and 5 p.m. Pacific time.

You can also fax your questions to us at (877) 473-0190 any time. Please include a cover sheet addressed to “Customer Service.”

We are always interested in suggestions for improving our products. You can use the report form in the back of this manual to send us your recommendations.

1.1 Product Overview

Protogate provides a variety of wide-area network (WAN) connectivity solutions for real-time financial, defense, telecommunications, and process-control applications. Protogate's Freeway server offers flexibility and ease of programming using a variety of LAN-based server hardware platforms. Now a consistent and compatible embedded intelligent communications processor (ICP) product offers the same functionality as the Freeway server, allowing individual client computers to connect directly to the WAN.

Both Freeway and the embedded ICP use the same data link interface (DLI). Therefore, migration between the two environments simply requires linking your client application with the proper library. Various client operating systems are supported (for example, UNIX, VMS, and Windows NT).

Protogate protocols that run on the ICPs are independent of the client operating system and the hardware platform (Freeway or embedded ICP).

1.1.1 Freeway Server

Protogate's Freeway communications servers enable client applications on a local-area network (LAN) to access specialized WANs through the DLI. The Freeway server can be any of several models (for example, Freeway 1100, Freeway 2000/4000, or Freeway 8000/8800). The Freeway server is user programmable and communicates in real time. It provides multiple data links and a variety of network services to LAN-based clients. [Figure 1-1](#) shows the Freeway configuration.

To maintain high data throughput, Freeway uses a multi-processor architecture to support the LAN and WAN services. The LAN interface is managed by a single-board computer, called the server processor. It uses the commercially available VxWorks operating system to provide a full-featured base for the LAN interface and layered services needed by Freeway.

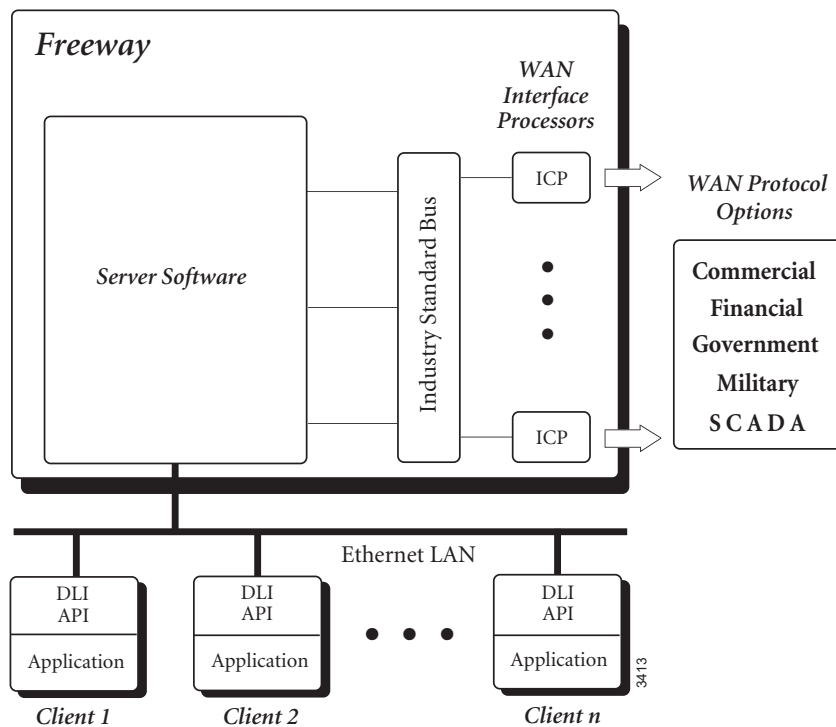


Figure 1–1: Freeway Configuration

1.1.2 Embedded ICP

The embedded ICP connects your client computer directly to the WAN (for example, using Protogate's ICP2432 PCIbus board). The embedded ICP provides client applications with the same WAN connectivity as the Freeway server, using the same data link interface. The ICP runs the communication protocol software using Protogate's real-time operating system. [Figure 1–2](#) shows the embedded ICP configuration.

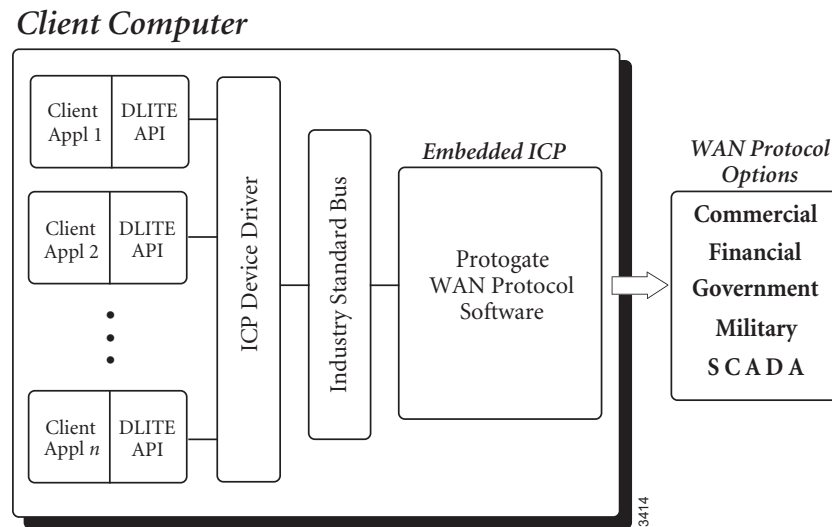


Figure 1–2: Embedded ICP Configuration

Summary of product features:

- Provision of WAN connectivity either through a LAN-based Freeway server or directly using an embedded ICP
- Elimination of difficult LAN and WAN programming and systems integration by providing a powerful and consistent data link interface
- Variety of off-the-shelf communication protocols available from Protogate which are independent of the client operating system and hardware platform
- Support for multiple WAN communication protocols simultaneously
- Support for multiple ICPs (two, four, eight, or sixteen communication lines per ICP)
- Wide selection of electrical interfaces including EIA-232, EIA-449, EIA-485, EIA-530, EIA-562, V.35, ISO-4903 (V.11), and MIL-188
- Creation of customized server-resident and ICP-resident software, using Protogate's software development toolkits
- Freeway server standard support for Ethernet and Fast Ethernet LANs running the transmission control protocol/internet protocol (TCP/IP)
- Freeway server standard support for FDDI LANs running the transmission control protocol/internet protocol (TCP/IP)
- Freeway server management and performance monitoring with the simple network management protocol (SNMP), as well as interactive menus available through a local console, telnet, or rlogin

1.2 Freeway Client-Server Environment

The Freeway server acts as a gateway that connects a client on a local-area network to a wide-area network. Through Freeway, a client application can exchange data with a remote data link application. Your client application must interact with the Freeway server and its resident ICPs before exchanging data with the remote data link application.

One of the major Freeway server components is the message multiplexor (MsgMux) that manages the data traffic between the LAN and the WAN environments. The client application typically interacts with the Freeway MsgMux through a TCP/IP BSD-style socket interface (or a shared-memory interface if it is a server-resident application (SRA)). The ICPs interact with the MsgMux through the DMA and/or shared-memory interface of the industry-standard bus to exchange WAN data. From the client application's point of view, these complexities are handled through a simple and consistent data link interface (DLI), which provides `dlOpen`, `dlWrite`, `dlRead`, and `dlClose` functions.

Figure 1–3 shows a typical Freeway connected to a locally attached client by a TCP/IP network across an Ethernet LAN interface. Running a client application in the Freeway client-server environment requires the basic steps described in Section 1.4.

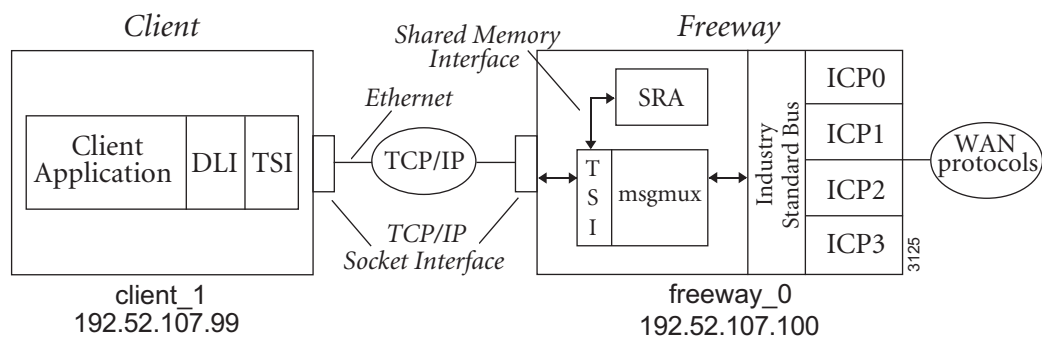


Figure 1–3: A Typical Freeway Server Environment

1.2.1 Establishing Freeway Server Internet Addresses

The Freeway server must be addressable in order for a client application to communicate with it. In the [Figure 1–3](#) example, the TCP/IP Freeway server name is freeway2, and its unique Internet address is 192.52.107.100. The client machine where the client application resides is client1, and its unique Internet address is 192.52.107.99. Refer to the *Freeway Server User's Guide* to initially set up your Freeway and download the operating system, server, and protocol software to Freeway.

1.3 Embedded ICP Environment

Refer to the user's guide for your embedded ICP and operating system (for example, the *ICP2432 User's Guide for Windows NT (DLITE Interface)*) for software installation and setup instructions. The user's guide also gives additional information regarding the data link interface (DLI) and embedded programming interface descriptions for your specific embedded environment. Refer back to [Figure 1–2 on page 27](#) for a diagram of the embedded ICP environment. Running a client application in the embedded ICP environment requires the basic steps described in [Section 1.4](#)

1.4 Client Operations

1.4.1 Defining the DLI and TSI Configuration

You must define the DLI sessions and the transport subsystem interface (TSI) connections between your client application and Freeway (or an embedded ICP). To accomplish this, you first define the configuration parameters in DLI and TSI ASCII configuration files, and then you run two preprocessor programs, `dlicfg` and `tsicfg`, to create binary configuration files (see [Chapter 7](#)). The `dllinit` function uses the binary configuration files to initialize the DLI environment.

1.4.2 Opening a Session

After the DLI and TSI configurations are properly defined, your client application uses the `dlOpen` function to establish a DLI session with an ICP link. As part of the session establishment process, the DLI establishes a TSI connection with the Freeway MsgMux through the TCP/IP BSD-style socket interface for the Freeway server, or directly to the client driver for the embedded ICP environment.

1.4.3 Exchanging Data with the Remote Application

After the link is enabled, the client application can exchange data with the remote application using the `dlWrite` and `dlRead` functions.

1.4.4 Closing a Session

When your application finishes exchanging data with the remote application, it calls the `dlClose` function to disable the ICP link, close the session with the ICP, and disconnect from Freeway (or the embedded ICP).

1.5 BSC Product Overview

The Protogate Binary Synchronous Communications (BSC) product is a software package that allows applications running on the client to communicate through one or more serial links to devices using the IBM BSC 3270 and/or BSC 2780/3780 protocol.

Each BSC serial link handles all low-level protocol activity thus freeing the client computer to perform other tasks. User-written client application programs interface to the BSC software through the Freeway DLI.

Each BSC serial link can be configured as a 2780/3780 link, a 3270 control station (similar to an IBM 3705 communications controller) or a 3270 tributary station (similar to an IBM 3274 cluster controller). Each link operates independently of other links on the same server and can be configured with different communication options.

1.5.1 Software Description

Protogate's BSC product includes the following major software components:

- A group of communications software downloadable images:
 1. Freeway server or embedded ICP software
 2. Real-time operating system (OS/Impact or OS/Protogate)
 3. BSC 3270 and BSC 2780/3780 communications software
- DLI library for linking with client applications
- A loopback test programs (bsc3270alp.c or bsc3780alp.c) to check product installation (see [Appendix E](#))
- An interactive demonstration program (bscdemo) that allows a user to send individual commands to the BSC software on Freeway. The bscdemo program is described in the *BSCDEMO User's Guide*.

The *Freeway Server User's Guide* or the user's guide for your particular embedded ICP and operating system (for example, the *ICP2432 User's Guide for Windows NT (DLITE Interface)*) describes the software installation procedures. The DLI provides an interface by which data is exchanged between the client application and Freeway; refer to the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide*.

1.5.2 Hardware Description

A typical Freeway configuration of Protogate's BSC product requires the following hardware:

- Freeway communications server (for example, Freeway 1100, Freeway 2000 or Freeway 4000) or an embedded ICP (for example the PCibus ICP2432)
- Ethernet connection to a client running TCP/IP (for a Freeway server)

2.1 BSC 3270 Protocol Implementation

The Protogate Binary Synchronous Communications (BSC) product is a software package that allows applications running on the client to communicate through one or more serial ports (links) to devices using the IBM BSC 3270 and/or the BSC 2780/3780 protocol.

Each BSC serial link handles all low-level protocol activity thus freeing the client processor to perform other tasks. User-written client application programs interface to the BSC software through the Freeway DLI functions, described in [Chapter 3](#) and [Chapter 5](#).

Each BSC serial link can be configured as a 2780/3780 link, a 3270 control station (similar to an IBM 3705 communications controller) or a 3270 tributary station (similar to an IBM 3274 cluster controller). Each link operates independently of other links on the same server and can be configured with different communication options.

IBM 3270 BSC is a half-duplex, multipoint protocol used by the IBM 3270 data display system. Details of the 3270 protocol can be found in the documents GA27-3004, *General Information — Binary Synchronous Communications*, IBM, and GA23-0061, *3274 Control Unit Description and Programmer's Guide*, IBM. The Protogate version of the IBM BSC 3270 protocol follows the rules set forth in the above documents, and its implementation is described throughout this manual.

2.1.1 3270 Control Station Operation

A link configured as a control station can poll up to 32 tributary stations (control units). Tributaries may be added to or removed from the polling list at any stage of link operation. Data blocks received from tributary stations are marked with the sender's control unit (CU) number and device unit (DU) number. The control station selects tributary stations when it has data to send. The client application program provides the CU and DU numbers for outbound data blocks.

2.1.2 3270 Tributary Station Operation

A link configured as a tributary station operates much like a single IBM 3274 control unit with the client application program acting as one or more (up to 32) attached devices. The client application program uses the station ID option ([Section 4.16 on page 97](#)) to specify the control unit number before link startup. The tributary station responds to all poll or select sequences that match its CU number and ignores all other input.

A link may also be configured in tributary "test mode" by setting the station ID option to 32. In test mode, a single link can appear to a master control station as multiple control units. Control unit numbers for each control unit to be active are placed in the poll list ([Section 3.4.1.7 on page 62](#)).

2.1.3 Transmission Codes

The Protogate BSC software can transmit and receive data in either the American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII) character set or the Extended Binary Coded Decimal Interchange Code (EBCDIC) character set depending on the setting of the BSC character set option ([Section 4.7 on page 91](#)). The data transferred between the client program and the BSC software is always in ASCII and is translated by the BSC software as required.

2.1.4 Messages and Transmission Blocks

The client computer sends data to the BSC software as complete messages. A message consists of one or more buffers of text or binary data. The BSC control characters are not included in the message. The control characters are inserted by the Freeway server before transmitting the data. Once in memory, the messages may be transmitted in smaller blocks, called transmission blocks, to provide more accurate and efficient error control. BSC begins each transmission block with a start-of-text (STX) control character and ends each with an end-of-transmission-block (ETB) control character, except for the last block of the message which ends with an end-of-text (ETX) character. All data blocking and deblocking is transparent to the user; however, the ICP message buffer size ([Section 3.4.1.3 on page 58](#)) and transmission block size ([Section 4.8 on page 92](#)) must be defined by the user before a communication link is placed in operation.

2.1.5 BSC 3270 Product Features

The Protogate BSC software has the following features:

- Text blocking and deblocking
- Safe store of received messages
- Automatic polling of control units
- Adjustable poll and reply delays

2.2 BSC 3270 Access Modes

Each BSC 3270 session on a link can be set to one of the following access modes: *Manager*, *Read* or *Control*. Only one session of each access mode may be active on any one link. The access mode is defined in the DLI configuration file ([Chapter 7](#)) using the client-related “mode” parameter (described in the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide*).

The valid BSC 3270 access modes are defined in [Table 2–1](#). [Table 2–2](#) shows the required access modes for various operations.

Note

The concept of a *Control* session is unique to Protogate's BSC product. Do not confuse it with the terms "control station" and "control unit," which are defined by the BSC 3270 protocol. You can have a *Control* session on either a control station or a control unit (tributary station). The *Manager* session moves the real data; the *Control* session only allows reporting of statistics, etc.

Table 2–1: BSC 3270 Session Access Modes

Mode	Usage
<i>Manager</i>	Set <i>Manager</i> mode for a session by setting the DLI "mode" configuration parameter to "mgr." <i>Manager</i> mode gives the client the right to issue any command or request. There can be only one <i>Manager</i> session per link.
<i>Read</i>	Set <i>Read</i> mode for a session by setting the DLI "mode" configuration parameter to "read." <i>Read</i> mode gives the client the right to issue the same commands as <i>Manager</i> mode. The main difference between the two modes is that when a <i>Read</i> session is present, all incoming serial line data read from the link is sent to the <i>Read</i> session only. Additionally, the safe store acknowledgment is sent to the <i>Read</i> session, even if the command is issued by the <i>Manager</i> session (the <i>Manager</i> session receives no acknowledgment). All error reports are duplicated and sent to both the <i>Manager</i> and <i>Read</i> sessions. Only one <i>Read</i> session is allowed per link.
<i>Control</i>	Set <i>Control</i> mode for a session by setting the DLI "mode" configuration parameter to "control." The <i>Control</i> session may not transmit data and does not receive incoming data. Any <i>Manager</i> session for the link with an active <i>Control</i> session does not receive copies of responses to commands sent by the <i>Control</i> session. There can be only one <i>Control</i> session per link.

Table 2–2: BSC 3270 Access Modes for Various Operations

Operation	Access Mode Required	Reference Section
Set Translation Table	<i>Manager or Read</i>	Section 3.4.1.1
Clear Statistics	<i>Manager or Read</i>	Section 3.4.1.2
Set ICP Message Buffer Size	Any mode	Section 3.4.1.3
Configure Link	<i>Manager or Read</i>	Section 3.4.1.4
Start Link	<i>Manager or Control</i>	Section 3.4.1.5
Stop Link	<i>Manager or Control</i>	Section 3.4.1.6
Set Poll List	<i>Manager</i>	Section 3.4.1.7
Safe Store Acknowledge	<i>Manager or Read</i>	Section 3.4.1.8
Specific Poll	<i>Manager</i>	Section 3.4.1.9
Send EOT	<i>Manager or Read</i>	Section 3.4.1.11
Buffer Report	Any mode	Section 3.4.2.1
Configuration Report	Any mode	Section 3.4.2.2
Statistics Report	Any mode	Section 3.4.2.3
Status Report	Any mode	Section 3.4.2.4
Translation Table Report	Any mode	Section 3.4.2.5
Software Version Report	Any mode	Section 3.4.2.6
Poll List Report	Any mode	Section 3.4.2.7
Data Transmit (dlWrite)	<i>Manager or Read</i>	Section 3.4.3
Data Receive (dlRead)	Any mode	Section 3.5

2.3 BSC 2780/3780 Protocol Implementation

The protocol used in the BSC 2780/3780 product is a logical, half-duplex, bisynchronous, point-to-point protocol used by IBM 2780 and IBM 3780 remote job entry terminals (sometimes called RJE terminals). Details on the operation of IBM's BSC protocol can be found in document GA27-3004, *General Information — Binary Synchronous Communications, IBM*. Although this manual might imply that BSC 2780 and BSC 3780 are different protocols, the line-control procedures of BSC 2780 and BSC 3780 are exactly the same. The only difference is in the format of the text blocks. Protogate's BSC 2780/3780 product can send and receive both 2780 and 3780 text blocks in normal and transparent modes. If you are not sure which protocol you'll be using, the following sections explain the differences between BSC 2780 and BSC 3780.

2.3.1 BSC 2780 Protocol

[Figure 2–1](#) shows the normal 2780 text block. It begins with a start-of-text character (STX character) and ends with an end-of-transmission-block (ETB) or end-of-text (ETX) character. Each data record within the text block ends with a unit separator character (called 'US' in ASCII and 'IUS' in EBCDIC), except the last record of the block. Each record is followed by a block-check character (called BCC) that is a redundancy check (CRC-16 or LRC-8) of the characters in that record, including the US or ETB/ETX character. The number of synchronization (SYN) characters are described in [Section 6.4 on page 161](#). PAD characters ensure complete transmission of the data block.

SYN	SYN	STX	record	US	BCC	record	US	BCC	record	ETX	BCC	PAD
-----	-----	-----	--------	----	-----	--------	----	-----	--------	-----	-----	-----

Figure 2–1: Normal 2780 Text Block

Figure 2–2 shows the transparent 2780 text block. Each block starts with a data-link-escape STX character pair (a DLE STX character combination) and ends with a DLE ETB or DLE ETX character pair. Each record within the text block also starts with DLE STX and ends with a DLE US. In transparent operation, two SYN characters must be inserted after each block check character that follows DLE US.

SYN	SYN	DLE	STX	record				DLE	US	BCC	SYN	SYN	DLE	STX	record			
		DLE	US	BCC	...	SYN	SYN	DLE	STX		record		DLE	ETX	BCC	PAD		

Figure 2–2: Transparent 2780 Text Block

BSC 2780 text blocks are normally a maximum of 400 bytes, which is the internal buffer size of the IBM 2780 terminal. More details of the BSC 2780 protocol can be found in the IBM document, *Component Description: IBM 2780 Data Transmission Terminal*.

2.3.2 BSC 3780 Protocol

Figure 2–3 shows the normal 3780 text block. It begins with a start-of-text (STX) character and ends with an end-of-transmission-block (ETB) or end-of-text (ETX) character. Each data record within the text block ends with a record separator character (called ‘RS’ in ASCII and ‘IRS’ in EBCDIC), except the last record of the block where insertion of an RS character is optional. Each text block is followed by a block check character (a BCC) that is a redundancy check (CRC-16 or LRC-8) of the characters in the entire block, starting with the first character following STX and ending with the ETB or ETX character. The number of SYN characters are described in [Section 6.4 on page 161](#). PAD characters ensure complete transmission of the data block.

Figure 2–4 shows the transparent 3780 text block. Each block starts with DLE STX and ends with DLE ETB or DLE ETX.

SYN	SYN	STX	record	RS	record	RS	record	ETX	BCC	PAD
-----	-----	-----	--------	----	--------	----	--------	-----	-----	-----

Figure 2–3: Normal 3780 Text Block

SYN	SYN	DLE	STX	record	DLE	RS	record	DLE	RS	record	DLE	RS	DLE	ETX	BCC	PAD
-----	-----	-----	-----	--------	-----	----	--------	-----	----	--------	-----	----	-----	-----	-----	-----

Figure 2–4: Transparent 3780 Text Block

The maximum size for a 3780 text block is 512 bytes including the STX and ETX characters. BSC 3780 also allows for compression of two or more consecutive space characters within the text block. Consecutive spaces are replaced with a GS character (IGS in EBCDIC) and a count character. More information on the BSC 3780 protocol can be found in the IBM document, *Component Description: IBM 3780 Data Transmission Terminal*.

2.3.3 Transmission Codes

The Protogate BSC software can transmit and receive data in either the American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII) character set or the Extended Binary Coded Decimal Interchange Code (EBCDIC) character set depending on the setting of the BSC character set option ([Section 6.7 on page 162](#)). The data transferred between the client program and the BSC software is always in ASCII and is translated by the BSC software as required.

2.3.4 Messages and Transmission Blocks

The client computer sends data to the BSC software as complete messages. A message consists of one or more buffers of text or binary data. The BSC control characters are not included in the message. The control characters are inserted by BSC before transmitting the data. Once in memory, the messages may be transmitted in smaller blocks,

called transmission blocks, to provide more accurate and efficient error control. BSC begins each transmission block with a start-of-text (STX) control character and ends each with an end-of-transmission-block (ETB) control character, except for the last block of the message which ends with an end-of-text (ETX) character. All data blocking and deblocking is transparent to the user; however, the ICP message buffer size ([Section 5.4.1.3 on page 119](#)) and transmission block size ([Section 6.8 on page 164](#)) must be defined by the user before a communication link is placed in operation.

2.3.5 BSC 2780/3780 Product Features

In addition to handling the basic BSC 2780 and BSC 3780 protocols, the Protogate BSC 2780/3780 software includes several features that allow a user to tune the product to handle protocol and programming variations. This manual describes these features in detail in later sections.

The following features allow the user to adjust the product for variations of the BSC 2780/3780 protocol:

- Signon procedure for exchange of local and remote identification sequences
- Safe store of received messages
- Selectable compression of spaces
- Selectable conversational mode
- Variable transmit text block size
- CRC-16 support for ASCII text blocks
- Variable reply timer and retry limit
- Selectable action on control characters (RVI, TTD, WACK, and ACK)
- Line turnaround control

The following features allow greater programming flexibility:

- Multiple levels of interface routines
- Automatic dialing of SADL, AT, and V.25bis autodial modems
- *Trace* session for recording protocol activity
- *Control* session for control and monitoring of multiple links
- Automatic text blocking and deblocking

The multipoint (poll-select) protocol operation feature is not supported by the Protogate BSC 2780/3780 product.

2.4 BSC 2780/3780 Access Modes

Each BSC 2780/3780 session on a link can be set to one of the following access modes: *Manager*, *Read*, *Control*, or *Trace*. Multiple sessions can be active on any one link, but only one of each access mode is allowed per link. The access mode is defined in the DLI configuration file ([Chapter 7](#)) using the client-related “mode” parameter (described in the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide*).

The valid BSC 2780/3780 access modes are defined in [Table 2–3](#). [Table 2–4](#) shows the required access modes for various operations.

Caution

If a *Manager* session is using blocking I/O (with a *Read* session on the same link), the unacknowledged writes from the Safe Store Acknowledgment and Disconnect commands could eventually prohibit further writes to Freeway. Therefore, Protogate recommends that these two commands be issued only from the *Read* session.

Table 2–3: BSC 2780/3780 Session Access Modes

Mode	Usage
<i>Manager</i>	Set <i>Manager</i> mode for a session by setting the DLI “mode” configuration parameter to “mgr.” <i>Manager</i> mode gives the client the right to issue any command or request. There can be only one <i>Manager</i> session per link.
<i>Read</i>	Set <i>Read</i> mode for a session by setting the DLI “mode” configuration parameter to “read.” <i>Read</i> mode gives the client the right to issue the same commands as <i>Manager</i> mode (except the Autodial Start and Modem Configuration commands). The main difference between the two modes is that when a <i>Read</i> session is present, all incoming serial line data read from the link is sent to the <i>Read</i> session only. Additionally, the safe store acknowledgment and disconnect acknowledgment are sent to the <i>Read</i> session, even if the commands were issued by the <i>Manager</i> session (the <i>Manager</i> session receives no acknowledgment). All error reports are duplicated and sent to both the <i>Manager</i> and <i>Read</i> sessions (the Autodial Start acknowledgment is sent to the <i>Manager</i> session only). Only one <i>Read</i> session is allowed per link.
<i>Control</i>	Set <i>Control</i> mode for a session by setting the DLI “mode” configuration parameter to “control.” The <i>Control</i> session may not transmit data and does not receive incoming data. Any <i>Manager</i> session for the link with an active <i>Control</i> session does not receive copies of responses to commands sent by the <i>Control</i> session. There can be only one <i>Control</i> session per link.
<i>Trace</i>	Set <i>Trace</i> mode for a session by setting the DLI “mode” configuration parameter to “trace.” There is only one <i>Trace</i> session allowed per link on the ICP, for monitoring the activity on that link. The <i>Trace</i> session is limited to issuing or receiving the Start Link Trace and Stop Link Trace commands, and for receiving link trace data (see Section 5.4.1.15 on page 136).

Table 2–4: BSC 2780/3780 Access Modes for Various Operations

Operation	Access Mode Required	Reference Section
Set Translation Table	<i>Manager or Read</i>	Section 5.4.1.1
Clear Statistics	<i>Manager, Read, or Control</i>	Section 5.4.1.2
Set ICP Message Buffer Size	<i>Manager, Read, or Control</i>	Section 5.4.1.3
Configure Link	<i>Manager, Read, or Control</i>	Section 5.4.1.4
Start Link	<i>Manager or Control</i>	Section 5.4.1.5
Stop Link	<i>Manager or Control</i>	Section 5.4.1.6
Safe Store Acknowledge	<i>Manager or Read</i>	Section 5.4.1.7
Send EOT	<i>Manager or Read</i>	Section 5.4.1.8
Send Disconnect	<i>Manager or Read</i>	Section 5.4.1.9
Send Signon	<i>Manager or Read</i>	Section 5.4.1.10
Poll Line with No Data	<i>Manager, Read, or Control</i>	Section 5.4.1.11
Flush Queue	<i>Manager or Read</i>	Section 5.4.1.12
Autodial Start	<i>Manager</i>	Section 5.4.1.13
Modem Configuration	<i>Manager</i>	Section 5.4.1.14
Link Trace	<i>Manager only</i>	Section 5.4.1.15
Buffer Report	<i>Manager, Read, or Control</i>	Section 5.4.2.1
Configuration Report	<i>Manager, Read, or Control</i>	Section 5.4.2.2
Statistics Report	<i>Manager, Read, or Control</i>	Section 5.4.2.3
Status Report	<i>Manager, Read, or Control</i>	Section 5.4.2.4
Translation Table Report	<i>Manager, Read, or Control</i>	Section 5.4.2.5
Software Version Report	<i>Manager, Read, or Control</i>	Section 5.4.2.6
Data Transmit (dlWrite)	<i>Manager or Read</i>	Section 5.4.3
Data Receive (dlRead)	<i>Any mode</i>	Section 5.5

BSC 3270 DLI Functions

Note

In this chapter, the DLI API interface applies to both a Freeway server or an embedded ICP using DLITE. For the embedded ICP, also refer to the user's guide for your ICP and operating system (for example, the *ICP2432 User's Guide for Windows NT (DLITE Interface)*).

Note

This chapter, along with [Chapter 4](#) and [Appendix A](#), should be read by programmers who are interfacing an application program to a BSC 3270 environment. If you are programming BSC 2780/3780, refer to [Chapter 5](#), [Chapter 6](#), and [Appendix B](#).

This chapter describes how to use the data link interface (DLI) functions to write client applications interfacing to the Freeway BSC 3270 protocol software. You should be familiar with the concepts described in the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide*; however, some summary information is provided in [Section 3.1](#).

The following might be helpful references while reading this chapter:

- [Section 3.2](#) compares a typical sequence of DLI function calls using blocking versus non-blocking I/O.

- [Appendix D](#) explains error handling and provides a summary table of BSC error codes. The *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide* gives complete DLI error code descriptions.
- The *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide* provides a generic code example which can guide your application program development, along with the program described in [Appendix E](#) of this manual.
- [Appendix F](#) provides detailed command and response header formats.

3.1 Summary of DLI Concepts

The DLI presents a consistent, high-level, common interface across multiple clients, operating systems, and transport services. It implements functions that permit your application to use data link services to access, configure, establish and terminate sessions, and transfer data across multiple data link protocols. The DLI concepts are described in detail in the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide*. This section summarizes the basic information.

3.1.1 Configuration in the Freeway Environment

Several items must be configured before a client application can run in the Freeway environment:

- Freeway server configuration
- data link interface (DLI) session configuration
- transport subsystem interface (TSI) connection configuration
- protocol-specific ICP link configuration

The Freeway server is normally configured only once, during the installation procedures described in the *Freeway Server User's Guide*. DLI session and TSI connection

configurations are defined by specifying parameters in DLI and TSI ASCII configuration files and then running two preprocessor programs, `dlicfg` and `tsicfg`, to create binary configuration files. Refer to [Chapter 7](#) of this document, as well as the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide* and the *Freeway Transport Subsystem Interface Reference Guide*.

ICP link configuration can be performed using any of the following methods:

- The `dlOpen` function can configure the ICP links during the DLI session establishment process using the default ICP link configuration values provided by the protocol software.
- You can specify ICP link parameters in the DLI ASCII configuration file and then run the `dlicfg` preprocessor program (see [Chapter 7](#)). The `dlOpen` function uses the resulting DLI binary configuration file to perform the link configuration during the DLI session establishment process.
- You can perform ICP link configuration within the client application (described in [Section 3.4.1.4](#)). This method is useful if you need to change link configuration without exiting the application.

3.1.2 Normal versus Raw Operation

There are two choices for the protocol DLI configuration parameter:

- A session is opened for *Normal* operation if you set `protocol` to a specific protocol (for example, “BSC3270”); then the DLI software configures the ICP links using the values in the DLI configuration file and transparently handles all headers and I/O.
- A session is opened for *Raw* operation if you set `protocol` to “raw”; then your application must handle all configuration, headers, and I/O details. *Raw* operation is recommended for data transfer where responses might be received out of

sequence (especially in BSC 3270). Refer to the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide* if you need to use *Raw* operation.

Normal and *Raw* operations can be mixed. For example, the client application session can be configured for *Normal* operation (allowing DLI to handle link startup and configuration), but the read and write requests ([Section 3.4 on page 55](#) and [Section 3.5 on page 80](#)) can use *Raw* operation by including the optional arguments structure containing the protocol-specific information ([Section 3.3.1 on page 54](#)).

Note

The protocol-specific `writeType` DLI configuration parameter ([Table 7–1 on page 190](#)) specifies the type of data to be sent on the line (*normal* or *transparent*). This parameter should not be confused with *Normal* operation.

3.1.3 Blocking versus Non-blocking I/O

Note

Earlier Freeway releases used the term “synchronous” for blocking I/O and “asynchronous” for non-blocking I/O. Some parameter names reflect the previous terminology.

Non-blocking I/O applications are useful when doing I/O to multiple channels with a single process where it is not possible to “block” on any one channel waiting for I/O completion. Blocking I/O applications are useful when it is reasonable to have the calling process wait for I/O completion.

In the Freeway environment, the term blocking I/O indicates that the `dlOpen`, `dlClose`, `dlRead` and `dlWrite` functions do not return until the I/O is complete. For non-blocking I/O, these functions might return after the I/O has been queued at the client, but before the transfer to Freeway is complete. The client must handle I/O completions at the soft-

ware interrupt level in the completion handler established by the `dlInit` or `dlOpen` function, or by periodic use of `dlPoll` to query the I/O completion status.

The `asyncIO` DLI configuration parameter specifies whether an application session uses blocking or non-blocking I/O. The `alwaysQIO` DLI configuration parameter further qualifies the operation of non-blocking I/O activity. Refer to the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide* for more information.

The effects on different DLI functions, resulting from the choice of blocking or non-blocking I/O, are explained in the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide* and throughout this chapter as they relate to BSC 3270.

3.1.4 Buffer Management

Currently the interrelated Freeway, DLI, TSI and ICP buffers default to a size of 1024 bytes.

Caution

If you need to change a buffer size for your application, refer to the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide* for explanations of the complexities that you must consider.

3.2 Example BSC 3270 Call Sequences

[Table 3–1](#) shows the sequence of DLI function calls to send and receive data using blocking I/O. [Table 3–2](#) is the non-blocking I/O example. The remainder of this chapter and the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide* give further information about each function call.

Note

The example call sequences assume that the `cfgLink` and `enable DLI` configuration parameters are both set to “yes” (the defaults). This means that `dlOpen` configures and enables the ICP links. [Figure 7–2 on page 189](#) shows an example DLI configuration file.

Table 3–1: DLI Call Sequence for BSC 3270 (Blocking I/O)

-
1. Call `dlInit` to initialize the DLI operating environment. The first parameter is your DLI binary configuration file name.
 2. Call `dlOpen` for each required session (link) to get a session ID.
 3. Call `dlBufAlloc` for all required input and output buffers.
 4. Call `dlWrite` to send requests and data to Freeway ([Section 3.4 on page 55](#)).
 5. Call `dlRead` to receive responses and data from Freeway ([Section 3.5 on page 80](#)).
 6. Repeat Step 4 and Step 5 until you are finished writing and reading.
 7. Call `dlBufFree` for all buffers allocated in Step 3.
 8. Call `dlClose` for each session ID obtained in Step 2.
 9. Call `dlTerm` to terminate your application's access to Freeway.
-

Caution

When using non-blocking I/O, a `dlRead` request must always be queued to avoid loss of data or responses from the ICP (see Step 5 of [Table 3–2](#)).

Table 3–2: DLI Call Sequence for BSC 3270 (Non-blocking I/O)

-
1. Call `dlInit` to initialize the DLI operating environment. The first parameter is your DLI binary configuration file name.
 2. Call `dlOpen` for each required session (link) to get a session ID.
 3. Call `dlPoll` to confirm the success of each session ID obtained in Step 2.
 4. Call `dlBufAlloc` for all required input and output buffers.
 5. Call `dlRead` to queue the initial read request.
 6. Call `dlWrite` to send requests and data to Freeway ([Section 3.4 on page 55](#)).
 7. Call `dlRead` to queue reads to receive responses and data from Freeway ([Section 3.5 on page 80](#)).
 8. As I/Os complete and the I/O completion handler is invoked, call `dlPoll` to confirm the success of each `dlWrite` in Step 6 and to accept the data from each `dlRead` in Step 7.
 9. Repeat Step 6 through Step 8 until you are finished writing and reading.
 10. Call `dlBufFree` for all buffers allocated in Step 4.
 11. Call `dlClose` for each session ID obtained in Step 2.
 12. Call `dlPoll` to confirm that each session was closed in Step 11.
 13. Call `dlTerm` to terminate your application's access to Freeway.
-

3.3 Overview of DLI Functions for BSC 3270

This section summarizes the DLI functions used in writing a client application. An overview of using the DLI functions is:

- Start up communications (dlInit, dlOpen, dlBufAlloc)
- Send requests and data using dlWrite
- Receive responses using dlRead
- For blocking I/O, use dlSyncSelect to query read availability status for multiple sessions
- For non-blocking I/O, handle I/O completions at the software interrupt level in the completion handler established by the dlInit or dlOpen function, or by periodic use of dlPoll to query the I/O completion status
- Monitor errors using dlpErrString
- If necessary, reset and download the protocol software to the ICP using dlControl
- Shut down communications (dlBufFree, dlClose, dlTerm)

[Table 3–3](#) summarizes the DLI function syntax and parameters, listed in the most likely calling order. Refer to the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide* for details.

Caution

When using non-blocking I/O, there must always be at least one dlRead request queued to avoid loss of data or responses from the ICP.

Table 3–3: DLI Functions: Syntax and Parameters (Listed in Typical Call Order)

DLI Function	Parameter(s)	Parameter Usage
int dlInit	(char *cfgFile, char *pUsrCb, int (*fUsrIOCH)(char *pUsrCb));	DLI binary configuration file name Optional I/O complete control block Optional IOCH and parameter
int dlOpen ¹	(char *cSessionName, int (*fUsrIOCH) (char *pUsrCB, int iSessionID));	Session name in DLI config file Optional I/O completion handler Parameters for IOCH
int dlPoll	(int iSessionID, int iPollType, char **ppBuf, int *piBufLen, char *pStat, DLI_OPT_ARGS **ppOptArgs);	Session ID from dlOpen Request type Poll type dependent buffer Size of I/O buffer (bytes) Status or configuration buffer Optional arguments
int dlpErrString	(int dlErrNo);	DLI error number (global variable dlerrno)
char *dlBufAlloc	(int iBufLen);	Minimum buffer size
int dlRead	(int iSessionID, char **ppBuf, int iBufLen, DLI_OPT_ARGS *pOptArgs);	Session ID from dlOpen Buffer to receive data Maximum bytes to be returned Optional arguments structure
int dlWrite	(int iSessionID, char *pBuf, int iBufLen, int iWritePriority, DLI_OPT_ARGS *pOptArgs);	Session ID from dlOpen Source buffer for write Number of bytes to write Write priority (normal or expedite) Optional arguments structure
int dlSyncSelect	(int iNbrSessID, int sessIDArray[], int readStatArray[]);	Number of session IDs Packed array of session IDs Array containing read status for IDs
char *dlBufFree	(char *pBuf);	Buffer to return to pool
int dlClose	(int iSessionID, int iCloseMode);	Session ID from dlOpen Mode (normal or force)
int dlTerm	(void);	
int dlControl	(char *cSessionName, int iCommand, int (*fUsrIOCH) (char *pUsrCB, int iSessionID));	Session name in DLI config file Command (e.g. reset/download) Optional I/O completion handler Parameters for IOCH

¹ It is critical for the client application to receive the dlOpen completion status before making any other DLI requests; otherwise, subsequent requests will fail. After the dlOpen completion, however, you do not have to maintain a one-to-one correspondence between DLI requests and dlRead requests.

3.3.1 DLI Optional Arguments

[Section 3.4](#) and [Section 3.5](#) describe the `dlWrite` and `dlRead` functions for a BSC 3270 application. Both functions can use the optional arguments parameter to provide the protocol-specific information required for *Raw* operation ([Section 3.1.2](#)). The “C” definition of the optional arguments structure is shown in [Figure 3–1](#).

```
typedef struct    _DLI_OPT_ARGS
{
    unsigned short usFWPacketType; /* FW_CONTROL or FW_DATA */
    unsigned short usFWCommand;    /* FW_ICP_WRITE, FW_ICP_WRITE_EXP */
                                /* or FW_ICP_READ */
    unsigned short usFWStatus;
    unsigned short usICPClientID;
    unsigned short usICPServerID;
    unsigned short usICPCommand; /* Required for start/stop cmds */
    short          iICPStatus;    /* ICP return error code (dlRead) */
    unsigned short usICPParms[3];
    unsigned short usProtCommand; /* Required field (dlWrite) */
    short          iProtModifier;
    unsigned short usProtLinkID;
    unsigned short usProtCircuitID; /* Used for translation tables */
    unsigned short usProtSessionID;
    unsigned short usProtSequence;
    unsigned short usProtXParms[2];
} DLI_OPT_ARGS;
```

Figure 3–1: “C” Definition of DLI Optional Arguments Structure

3.4 Overview of BSC 3270 Requests using dlWrite

For BSC 3270 the dlWrite function supports three dlWrite categories: commands, information requests, and data transfer, which are discussed in detail in [Section 3.4.1](#) through [Section 3.4.3](#). Whether you use blocking or non-blocking I/O, each dlWrite request must be followed by a dlRead request to receive the command confirmation, information requested, or acknowledgment of the data transfer. [Section 3.5](#) discusses these different responses received using dlRead.

In a typical BSC 3270 application, ALL dlWrite requests use *Raw* operation; that is, the optional arguments structure ([page 54](#)) is required to specify protocol-specific information.

[Table 3–4](#) shows the BSC 3270 DLI request codes for different categories of the dlWrite function. Each request is explained in the following sections.

In addition to the command-specific error codes listed in the following sections, an unsuccessful dlWrite function can return one of the following error codes in the dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

DLI_ICP_ERR_INBUF_OVERFLOW	Input buffer overflow
DLI_ICP_ERR_OUTBUF_OVERFLOW	Output buffer overflow

Table 3–4: Categories for BSC 3270 dlWrite Requests

Category	DLI Request Code	Usage
Commands to ICP	DLI_PROT_CFG_LINK	Configure link
	DLI_PROT_CHANGE_STATUS	Change virtual 3270 device status
	DLI_PROT_CLR_STATISTICS	Clear statistics
	DLI_PROT_CREATE_DEVICE	Create virtual 3270 devices
	DLI_PROT_SAFE_STORE_ACK	Send safe store acknowledge
	DLI_PROT_SEND_BIND	Start link
	DLI_PROT_SEND_EOT	Send EOT
	DLI_PROT_SEND_UNBIND	Stop link
	DLI_PROT_SET_BUF_SIZE	Set ICP message buffer size
	DLI_PROT_SET_POLL_LIST	Set poll list
	DLI_PROT_SET_SPECIAL_POLL	Issue specific poll
	DLI_PROT_SET_TRANS_TABLE	Set translation table
Report Requests	DLI_PROT_GET_BUF_REPORT	Request buffer report
	DLI_PROT_GET_DEVICE_STATUS	Request virtual 3270 device status
	DLI_PROT_GET_LINK_CFG	Request link configuration report
	DLI_PROT_GET_POLL_LIST	Request 3270 poll list
	DLI_PROT_GET_SOFTWARE_VER	Request software version ID
	DLI_PROT_GET_STATISTICS_REPORT	Request statistics report
	DLI_PROT_GET_STATUS_REPORT	Request status report
	DLI_PROT_GET_TRANS_TABLE	Request translation table
Data Transfer	DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA	Transmit normal data
	DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA_EOM	Transmit normal data with EOM
	DLI_PROT_SEND_TRANS_DATA	Transmit transparent data
	DLI_PROT_SEND_TRANS_DATA_EOM	Transmit transparent data with EOM

3.4.1 Commands using Raw dlWrite

[Section 3.4.1.1](#) through [Section 3.4.1.12](#) explain how to issue specific commands to the BSC 3270 software using the dlWrite function. Call dlRead to receive the command confirmation response (the dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand field is set by the DLI).

3.4.1.1 Set Translation Table Command

Use the dlWrite function with the pOptArgs.usProtCommand field set to DLI_PROT_SET_TRANS_TABLE to set translation table 1 or 2. Use the MSB of the pOptArgs.usProtCircuitID field to specify the translation table to be set (1 or 2). Each link can use either of the two tables for character translation. After Freeway startup, the tables contain the default values shown in [Appendix C](#). Use the data area of the buffer pointed to by the pBuf parameter to send the translation table values. The first 256 bytes of data are the conversion values for the ASCII-to-new character set translation. The next 256 bytes are the conversion values for the new character set-to-ASCII translation.

An unsuccessful Set Translation Table command can return one of the following error codes in the dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE	The function request is not available for the requested access mode.
DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_PARMS	The parameter value(s) used for the function call are illegal.

3.4.1.2 Clear Statistics Command

Use the dlWrite function with the pOptArgs.usProtCommand field set to DLI_PROT_CLR_STATISTICS to clear the link statistics report. The link statistics are cleared as soon as this command is received. The statistics are automatically cleared when a Start Link command ([Section 3.4.1.5](#)) is issued. The last four fields of the statistics report ([Section 3.4.2.3](#)) are CU-specific. Use the MSB of the pOptArgs.usProtCircuitID field to

specify the CU. If the LSB of the field is not set to '1,' the overall link statistics are not cleared. Use CU number 32 to clear statistics for all control units.

An unsuccessful Clear Statistics command can return the following error code in the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE</code>	The function request is not available for the requested access mode.
-----------------------------------	--

3.4.1.3 Set ICP Message Buffer Size Command

The ICP message buffer size applies to all links on the ICP. The DLI sets the ICP message buffer size as part of the configuration process during the `dlOpen` command. The default ICP message buffer size of 1024 is used in the following situations:

- If the buffer size is not changed after the very first `dlOpen` is issued, immediately after the BSC 3270 software is downloaded. (The `dlOpen` function uses the value specified in the `msgBlkSize` parameter value, [page 190](#).)
- If you specify an invalid buffer size for the Set ICP Message Buffer Size command

If your application must set the ICP message buffer size itself (see the caution previously mentioned in [Section 3.1.4](#)), it must set the `cfgLink` and enable DLI configuration parameters to “no” and perform the following procedure:

First, download the BSC 3270 software and send a `dlOpen` request for one link on the BSC 3270 ICP. Second, send a `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_SET_BUF_SIZE`. Set the `iBufLen` parameter to 2, and set the write buffer to the maximum data size (in bytes) for any single transfer to or from the BSC 3270 ICP. The valid range is 256 to 8192 bytes and must be less than or equal to the `maxBufSize` parameter in the TSI configuration file (the default value is 1024).

An unsuccessful Set ICP Message Buffer Size command can return one of the following error codes in the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE	The function request is not available for the requested access mode.
DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_PARMS	The parameter value(s) used for the function call are illegal.
DLI_ICP_ERR_LINK_ACTIVE	The link is already started.

3.4.1.4 Configure Link Command

The DLI can configure the ICP links by setting parameters in the DLI text configuration file and running the dlcfg preprocessor program as described in [Chapter 7](#); however, if your application must perform link configuration, set both the `cfgLink` and `enable DLI` configuration parameters to “no” for that link and then perform the configuration as follows:

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_CFG_LINK` to set the link configuration options. The buffer pointed to by the `pBuf` parameter contains a string of 16-bit words containing link configuration information. The string consists of a variable number of two-word configuration option/value pairs ending with a zero word. The `iBufLen` field equals the number of bytes in the configuration string including the zero terminator word. [Figure 3–2](#) gives an example of the link configuration string.

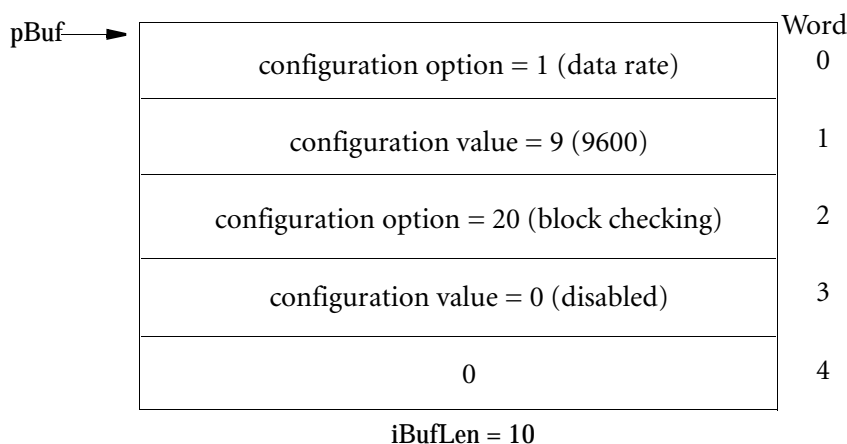


Figure 3–2: Link Configuration Block with Two Options

Each option number corresponds to a software-selectable option of the BSC 3270 software. The configuration value is used to set that option. [Table 4–1 on page 86](#) lists the available options and values for the BSC 3270 protocol.

An unsuccessful Configure Link command can return one of the following error codes in the `dlRead pOptArgs.iCPStatus` field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_LINK_ACTIVE</code>	The link is already started.
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE</code>	The function request is not available for the requested access mode.
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_PARMS</code>	The parameter value(s) used for the function call are illegal.

3.4.1.5 Start Link Command

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_SEND_BIND` and the `pOptArgs.usICPCommand` field set to `DLI_ICP_CMD_BIND` to start

a link after issuing a Stop Link command ([Section 3.4.1.6](#)). After receiving this command, the BSC 3270 software turns on the DTR modem control signal and prepares the link to transmit and receive data according to the current configuration settings. After a link starts, data transmission can begin on the line.

For blocking I/O, a successful Start Link command returns zero, but you must call `dlRead` to receive the `DLI_PROT_RESP_BIND_ACK` response indicating that the BSC 3270 software has received a data set ready (DSR) signal from the remote end. The link is not considered started until this signal is received; however, DSR can be ignored by using certain settings of the modem control option ([Section 4.14 on page 95](#)). If you are using non-blocking I/O, you must also make a `dlPoll` request to read the completion status of the command.

An unsuccessful Start Link command can return one of the following error codes in the `dlRead pOptArgs.iCPStatus` field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_LINK_ACTIVE</code>	The link is already started.
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE</code>	The function request is not available for the requested access mode.
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_PARMS</code>	The parameter value(s) used for the function call are illegal.

3.4.1.6 Stop Link Command

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_SEND_UNBIND` and the `pOptArgs.usICPCommand` field set to `DLI_ICP_CMD_UNBIND` to stop a link without ending your session with Freeway. This command turns off the DTR modem control signal and shuts down the link transmitter and receiver. A Stop Link command can be sent to a link that is active or already inactive.

A call to `dlClose` (described in the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide*) also stops the link, but terminates the session as well. This is the normal method to termi-

nate a session at the end of a client application. The Stop Link command is useful for temporarily stopping the link without terminating the session (for example, to reconfigure the link using the Link Configuration command). The link is restarted again by issuing a Start Link command.

For blocking I/O a successful Stop Link command returns zero, but you must call `dlRead` to receive the `DLI_PROT_RESP_UNBIND_ACK` response indicating the link is deactivated. If you are using non-blocking I/O, you must also make a `dlPoll` request to read the completion status of the command.

An unsuccessful Stop Link command can return one of the following error codes in the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE</code>	The function request is not available for the requested access mode.
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_PARMS</code>	The parameter value(s) used for the function call are illegal.

3.4.1.7 BSC 3270 Set Poll List Command

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_SET_POLL_LIST` to set the BSC 3270 poll list. The buffer pointed to by the `pBuf` parameter contains a variable number of 8-bit bytes (up to 64) containing the control unit (CU) numbers to poll. The `iBufLen` parameter equals the number of bytes in the poll list. When used on links configured as control stations, this command determines which tributary stations are to be included in the general polling sequence. CU numbers within the list may be in any order and duplication of CU numbers is allowed. If the BSC 3270 software detects an illegal CU number in the list (*i.e.* not from 0 to 31, inclusive), that CU is removed from the list. Unlike the other configuration commands, the Set Poll List command can be issued when the link is either active or inactive. [Figure 3–3](#) shows an example of the Set Poll List command. After the poll list is changed, the

BSC 3270 software responds with the new poll list using the same pOptArgs.usProtCommand field and format used to set the poll list.

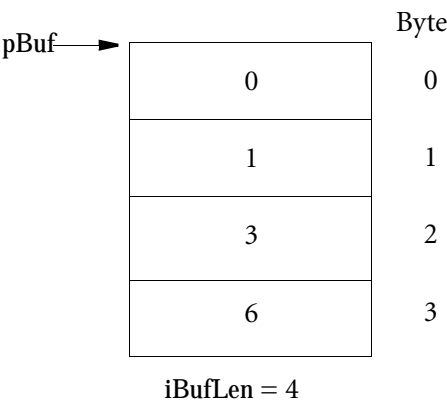


Figure 3–3: Set Poll List Command Example

It is possible to configure an “empty” poll list by issuing a poll list command with a –1 (hex FF) as the only CU number in the list. In this case, a control station does not issue general polls but may issue specific polls and select sequences as directed by the client.

For tributary links in test mode (Station ID = 32), the Set Poll List command is used to signify the control units which the BSC software will emulate on the link.

If a Set Poll List command is issued with a data size equal to zero, the BSC 3270 software responds to the client with a list of the current CU numbers in the poll list.

An unsuccessful Set Poll List command can return one of the following error codes in the dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE	The function request is not available for the requested access mode.
----------------------	--

3.4.1.8 Safe Store Acknowledge Command

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_SAFE_STORE_ACK` to acknowledge a stored message. When the safe store option is enabled, this command must be sent to the BSC software after each end-of-message data block (`pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA_EOM` or `DLI_PROT_SEND_TRANS_DATA_EOM`) is received by the client.

Safe store provides the ability to acknowledge a received data message after it has been examined by the client application program or stored on disk. Safe store is often used by financial institutions where a line acknowledge constitutes acceptance of a sale or trade.

Normally, the BSC software automatically acknowledges each received data block. With the safe store option enabled, the BSC software continues to acknowledge received intermediate blocks (ETB); however, when the last block (ETX) is received, the BSC software does not send an automatic acknowledgment on the line. Instead, the BSC software waits for the client to either accept the message by issuing a Safe Store Acknowledge command or reject the message by issuing a Send EOT command ([Section 3.4.1.11](#)).

The Safe Store Acknowledge command causes the BSC software to transmit a positive acknowledgment (ACK0 or ACK1) in response to the last block (ETX) received from the remote station. This is in contrast to the Send EOT command which causes the BSC software to reject the message by sending an EOT sequence instead of ACK. In this case, the remote station either records the data transmission as unsuccessful or attempts to retransmit the entire message.

If the client sends a Safe Store Acknowledge command while the line is still “active” (i.e., before an EOT sequence is received on the line), the client receives a Safe Store Acknowledge response *back* from BSC signifying that the safe store operation was successful.

Note that with the safe store option enabled, the client application program must send an acceptance (safe store acknowledge) or rejection (EOT) after every complete message is received. Otherwise, normal data communication on the line is suspended.

If the last block of a received message contains a parity or block check error, BSC transmits a NAK response as it would with any other block containing an error.

An unsuccessful Safe Store Acknowledge command can return one of the following error codes in the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE</code>	The function request is not available for the requested access mode.
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_MODE_NOT_SAFE</code>	The client issues a Send EOT command when BSC is not expecting one, or an EOT is received from the remote station (forward abort) before the client sends the message acceptance/rejection.
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_XMIT_ABORTED</code>	The remote computer (or BSC) sent EOT. The message is discarded.

Safe Store on BSC 3270 Control Stations

If the client application program fails to send an acceptance (safe store acknowledge) or rejection (EOT) immediately after reading the message, BSC 3270 sends WACK on the line until a client response is received. The WACKs are transmitted at intervals of one second less than the configured reply timer length in order to keep the line “active” while waiting for a client response.

When a control station expects a Safe Store Acknowledge command, the client must send the command (or EOT) before the link can continue its polling sequence. This is true even after the remote computer has cancelled the transmission by sending EOT.

Safe Store on BSC 3270 Tributary Stations

Unlike the control station, a tributary station is unable to send WACKs on the line to keep it active. In the 3270 protocol, a WACK from a tributary station constitutes a positive acknowledgment thus barring its use for safe store operation. Instead of sending WACK, a tributary station sends no response until it receives a Safe Store Acknowledge command (or Send EOT command) from the client even after it receives an EOT from the control station.

3.4.1.9 BSC 3270 Specific Poll Command

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_SET_SPECIAL_POLL` to issue a specific poll to a device. Set the MSB of the `pOptArgs.usProtCircuitID` field to the control unit number and set the LSB to the device unit number. The format of the Specific Poll is shown in [Figure 3–4](#). CUA represents the control unit address and DA the device address, which the BSC software derives from the CU and DU numbers specified by the client application.

The `dlRead` response to this command is either a data message from the control unit and device specified, or a station up or down error report.

SYN	SYN	EOT	SYN	SYN	CUA	CUA	DA	DA	ENQ	PAD
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	------------	------------	-----------	-----------	-----	-----

Figure 3–4: BSC 3270 Specific Poll Format

An unsuccessful Specific Poll command can return the following error code in the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE</code>	The function request is not available for the requested access mode.
-----------------------------------	--

3.4.1.10 Send EOT Command

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_SEND_EOT` to reject a received message when using the safe store option ([Section 4.15 on page 96](#)). The Send EOT is queued behind any preceding outgoing messages. The BSC 3270 software returns a confirmation response with the `dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_SEND_EOT` when the EOT is sent successfully.

An unsuccessful Send EOT command can return one of the following error codes in the `dlRead pOptArgs.iCPStatus` field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE</code>	The function request is not available for the requested access mode.
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_MODE_NOT_SAFE</code>	The client issues a Send EOT command when BSC is not expecting one, or an EOT is received from the remote station (forward abort) before the client sends the message acceptance/rejection.

3.4.1.11 Create Virtual 3270 Devices Command

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_CREATE_DEVICE` to create virtual 3270 devices. After booting Freeway, status information for each possible virtual 3270 device is cleared. For the client application to create virtual devices, the link must be configured as a tributary (slave) station ([Section 4.10 on page 93](#)), and the 3270 Text Addressing option ([Section 4.22 on page 102](#)) must be set to *device emulation*.

The type of device being emulated (display or printer) is specified by the range of the device number. Up to 32 devices can be defined for each control unit. Display devices 0 to 31 are specified as device numbers 0 to 31. Printer devices 0 to 31 are specified as device numbers 32 to 63 (device number + 32). Set the `dlWrite iBufLen` parameter to the number of device numbers listed in the `pBuf` data area. Set the MSB of the

pOptArgs.usProtCircuitID field to the control unit number to which the virtual devices are to be attached.

Figure 3–5 is an example of the pBuf data area for a command to create virtual displays 0, 1, and 3 and virtual printers 2 and 4.

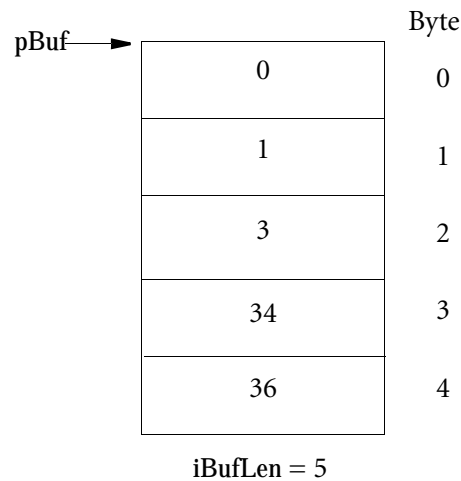


Figure 3–5: Example Create Virtual 3270 Devices

When the Create Virtual 3270 Devices command is sent to the ICP, all devices listed in the data area are created and placed on the status indicated in the pOptArgs.iProtModifier field (see Table 3–5). All devices not listed are taken out of service. Virtual devices remain configured until another Create Virtual 3270 Devices command is issued. Set iBufLen to 0 to take all devices out of service. The ICP does not respond to selects and specific polls addressed to devices that are placed out of service.

To change the status of any virtual device, see the Change Virtual 3270 Device Status command (Section 3.4.1.12). See Section A.4 on page 197 for more information on virtual device procedures and line sequence diagrams.

Table 3–5: Device Status Values

Status Value Specified in the pOptArgs.iProtModifier Field	Description
DLI_ICP_ERR_NO_ERR	The device is available and ready to accept 3270 commands from the control station.
DLI_ICP_ERR_DEVICE_BUSY	The device is available but is currently performing some operation (such as printing).
DLI_ICP_ERR_DEVICE_UNAVAIL	The device is unavailable or has become mechanically disabled (such as printer out of paper).

An unsuccessful Create Virtual 3270 Devices command can return one of the following error codes in the dlRead pOptArgs.iCPStatus field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE	The function request is not available for the requested access mode.
DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_PARMS	The parameter value(s) used for the function call are illegal.

3.4.1.12 Change Virtual 3270 Device Status Command

Use the dlWrite function with the pOptArgs.usProtCommand field set to DLI_PROT_CHANGE_STATUS to change the status of a virtual 3270 device. Set the MSB of the pOptArgs.usProtCircuitID field to the control unit number, and set the LSB to the device number of the affected device. Set the pOptArgs.iProtModifier field to one of the new device status values shown in [Table 3–5](#). For the client application to change virtual device status, the link must be configured as a tributary (slave) station ([Section 4.10 on page 93](#)), and the 3270 Text Addressing option ([Section 4.22 on page 102](#)) must be set to *device emulation*.

You can also use the Change Virtual 3270 Device Status command to create a single new virtual device. If the device specified by the control unit number and device number in the pOptArgs.usProtCircuitID field is not currently in service, it is placed into service. See

[Section A.4 on page 197](#) for more information on virtual device procedures and line sequence diagrams.

An unsuccessful Change Virtual 3270 Device Status command can return one of the following error codes in the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE</code>	The function request is not available for the requested access mode.
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_PARMS</code>	The parameter value(s) used for the function call are illegal.

3.4.2 Information Requests using Raw dlWrite

[Section 3.4.2.1](#) through [Section 3.4.2.8](#) explain how to issue specific information requests to the BSC 3270 software using the dlWrite function. You must then make a *Raw* dlRead request to receive the report information (the dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand field is set by the DLI to reflect the type of report, and the iBufLen parameter indicates the size of the message).

Caution

The dlWrite iBufLen parameter must specify a buffer size large enough for the requested report; otherwise, the dlRead function truncates the text to the size indicated by the dlWrite iBufLen parameter.

3.4.2.1 Request Buffer Report

Use the dlWrite function with the pOptArgs.usProtCommand field set to DLI_PROT_GET_BUF_REPORT to request a buffer report. The dlRead buffer report response (the pOptArgs.usProtCommand field is set to DLI_PROT_GET_BUF_REPORT by the DLI) consists of 20 words (40 bytes) of buffer information as described in [Table 3–6](#).

Table 3–6: Buffer Report Definition

Word	Parameter
1	ICP message buffer size
2	Number of free ICP message buffers
3	Total number of ICP message buffers
4	Transmission buffer size
5	Number of free transmission buffers
6	Total number of transmission buffers
7	Total number of links
8–20	Reserved for Protogate diagnostics

3.4.2.2 Request Configuration Report

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_GET_LINK_CFG` to request the current configuration option settings for a link. The `dlRead` configuration report response (the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field is set to `DLI_PROT_GET_LINK_CFG` by the DLI) consists of a sequence of 16-bit word pairs containing the option number in the first word and the option setting in the second. The report format is identical to that used by the `dlWrite` Configure Link command ([Figure 3–2 on page 60](#)).

3.4.2.3 Request Statistics Report

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_GET_STATISTICS_REPORT` to request link statistics. The BSC 3270 software maintains a set of link statistics. The report consists of 10 words (20 bytes) of statistics. The first six of these words contain link statistics. Link statistics keep track of events specific to a physical link on the communications server. The last four words of the report contain statistics for a particular control unit. To request a specific control unit, place the control unit number (0–31) in the MSB of the `pOptArgs.usProtCircuitID` field. Use a CU number of 32 to request statistics for all control units.

The format of the `dlRead` statistics report response (the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field is set to `DLI_PROT_GET_STATISTICS_REPORT` by the DLI) is shown in [Table 3–7](#).

Table 3–7: BSC 3270 Statistics Report Definition

Word	Statistic
1	Block check errors
2	Parity errors
3	Receive overrun errors
4	Buffer errors
5	Messages sent
6	Messages received
7	NAKs sent
8	NAKs received
9	Poll timeouts
10	Select timeouts

3.4.2.4 Request Status Report

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_GET_STATUS_REPORT` to request the current link status. The status report returned by `dlRead` is a snapshot of the link's hardware and software condition. The `dlRead` status report response (the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field is set to `DLI_PROT_GET_STATUS_REPORT` by the DLI) is an eleven-word report containing the current link status as shown in [Table 3–8](#).

Link status indicates whether the link is *on*, *off*, or *starting*. *Starting* indicates that a connection command was received, but the link did not start because it did not receive the data set ready (DSR) or data carrier detect (DCD) signal from the remote station (depending on the modem control option, [Section 4.14 on page 95](#)). A line is *off* until it is started and the signal has been received from the remote station.

Current operation mode settings indicate whether the line can operate. A line is *idle* when data transmission or reception can occur. The setting is *DSR off* if the DSR signal is off.

Table 3–8: Status Report Definition

Word	Description	Value	Setting
1	Link status	0	off
		1	on
		2	starting
2	Current operation mode	0	idle
		1	DSR off
3	DTR	0	off
		1	on
4	DCD	0	off
		1	on
5	RTS	0	off
		1	on
6	CTS	0	off
		1	on
7	Receiver	0	off
		1	on
8	Transmitter	0	off
		1	on
9	Reserved		
10	Reserved		
11	DSR	0	off
		1	on

The signals DTR, DSR, DCD, RTS, and CTS are reported *on* when the link detects them.

The transmitter or receiver is *on* while the link is actually transmitting or receiving data. The transmitter is also reported as *on* if the link is attempting (unsuccessfully) to transmit data on the line. This situation can occur if the transmit clock signal is not present.

3.4.2.5 Request Translation Table Report

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_GET_TRANS_TABLE` to request either of the two translation tables. Use the MSB of the `pOptArgs.usProtCircuitID` field to specify the requested translation table to be read (1 or 2).

The `dlRead` translation table report response (the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field is set to `DLI_PROT_GET_TRANS_TABLE` by the DLI) has the same format as the `dlWrite` Set Translation Table command ([Section 3.4.1.1](#)).

An unsuccessful translation table report request can return the following error code in the `dlRead` `pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_PARMS</code>	The parameter value(s) used for the function call are illegal.
------------------------------------	--

3.4.2.6 Request Software Version ID

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_GET_SOFTWARE_VER` to request the software version ID. The `dlRead` software version report response (the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field is set to `DLI_PROT_GET_SOFTWARE_VER` by the DLI) is a one-line report such as the following:

@(#) Protogate BSC for Freeway 2000 – V03.0k 02-May-01 OS/Impact Version V1.7

3.4.2.7 Request BSC 3270 Poll List

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_GET_POLL_LIST` to request the current BSC 3270 poll list. The `dlRead` poll list report response (the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field is set to `DLI_PROT_GET_POLL_LIST` by the DLI) has the same format as the `dlWrite` Set Poll List command ([Figure 3–3 on page 63](#)).

3.4.2.8 Request Virtual 3270 Device Status

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_GET_DEVICE_STATUS` to request the status of a virtual 3270 device. Set the MSB of the `pOptArgs.usProtCircuitID` field to the control unit number. For the client application to request virtual device status, the link must be configured as a tributary (slave) station ([Section 4.10 on page 93](#)), and the 3270 Text Addressing option ([Section 4.22 on page 102](#)) must be set to *device emulation*.

The `dlRead` device status report response (the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field is set to `DLI_PROT_GET_DEVICE_STATUS` by the DLI) lists the status of the current device numbers (maximum of 32). The format of the `dlRead` device status report is a single byte for each device number, starting with device number 0 in the first byte of the `pBuf` data area. [Figure 3–6](#) shows the status byte format for each device number.

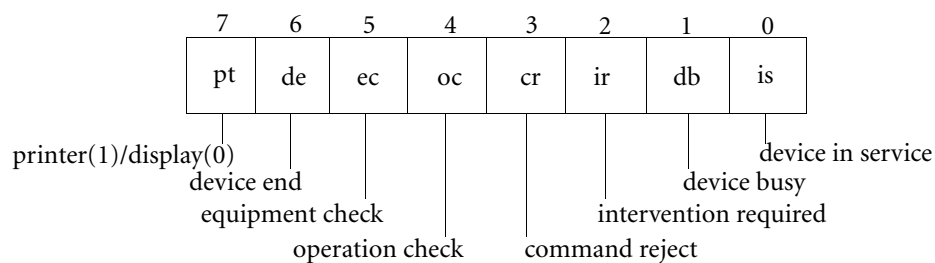


Figure 3–6: BSC 3270 Device Status Bits

When a tributary link is started, each device on that link has a status associated with it based on the settings of the device status bits. Every device on the link is in one of four general status conditions, which determines how that device responds to select sequences from the BSC 3270 master. [Table 3–9](#) lists the status conditions and responses.

Table 3–9: BSC 3270 Device Status Conditions and Responses

Status Condition	Status Bit	Response to Select
Nonexistent	is = 0	None
Available	is = 1	ACK 0
Unavailable	ir = 1	RVI
Busy	db = 1	WACK

See [Section A.4 on page 197](#) for more information on virtual device procedures and line sequence diagrams.

An unsuccessful 3270 virtual device status report request can return the following error code in the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_PARMS</code>	The parameter value(s) used for the function call are illegal.
------------------------------------	--

3.4.3 Data Transfer using Raw dlWrite

The BSC 3270 software provides two write types (EOM and non-EOM) for each data transfer to allow the user to send or receive a single message that is larger than the configured ICP message buffer size. Each type of data block consists of n bytes of data, where n is a number from 0 to the maximum data size specified by the Set ICP Message Buffer Size command ([Section 3.4.1.3](#)). Set the MSB of the pOptArgs.usProtCircuitID field to the control unit number for the data transfer, and set the LSB to the device unit number.

When the client computer sends a data block to a control station, BSC 3270 issues a select sequence on the line in order to transmit the data. If BSC 3270 is currently receiving data from the line, the data block waits in memory until the current operation is complete before attempting a select.

When the client sends a data block to a tributary station, the data block waits in memory until the station is polled. At that time, BSC 3270 transmits the data on the line.

If the localAck DLI configuration parameter is set to “no” (see the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide*), the client application must make a dlRead request to receive the data acknowledge response for each dlWrite data transfer request (the dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand field is set to DLI_PROT_RESP_LOCAL_ACK by the DLI). One DLI_PROT_RESP_LOCAL_ACK response (with the dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus field set to 1, signifying that one block of data was sent) is sent to the client computer after each data block has been successfully transmitted to the remote computer, and can be treated by the client program as the remote acknowledgment. Data acknowledgments are also used to report transmission errors (as a response to a dlRead request as described in [Section 3.5.3](#)). The client application can use the data acknowledge response to monitor the success or failure of transmitted data messages, or for regulating the number of out-bound messages that the BSC software has pending transmission at any one time.

If the DLI localAck configuration parameter is set to “yes” (which is the default), the data acknowledge response is implied by a successful dlWrite.

An unsuccessful `dlWrite` data transfer request can return one of the following error codes in the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_LINK_INACTIVE</code>	The link is stopped.
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE</code>	The function request is not available for the requested access mode.
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_XMIT_TIMEOUT</code>	The protocol software was unable to transmit the data. This error occurs when some or all of the modem signals are not present.

3.4.3.1 Send Normal Data

If your application needs to perform a *Raw* `dlWrite`, use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA` or `DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA_EOM` to send normal data. The data is code translated to ASCII or EBCDIC (depending on the Character Set option, [Section 4.7 on page 91](#)).

As an example, assuming the ICP message buffer size is 2048 bytes, to send a 4096-byte normal data block would require two writes, setting the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field to `DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA` and `DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA_EOM`, respectively. A 2048-byte message (or less) would require one write transfer setting the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field to `DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA_EOM`.

3.4.3.2 Send Transparent Data

If your application needs to perform a *Raw* `dlWrite`, use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_SEND_TRANS_DATA` or `DLI_PROT_SEND_TRANS_DATA_EOM` to send transparent data. The client can send transparent data in either ASCII or EBCDIC mode. In either mode, the data is not code-converted. The blocks are preceded by DLE STX and terminated with either DLE ETB or DLE ETX. The DLE characters are not counted in the block size. BSC 3270 performs all the required DLE insertion and deletion for transparent data streams.

3.5 Overview of BSC 3270 Responses using Raw dlRead

[Table 3–10](#) shows the valid BSC 3270 codes sent to your application in response to a *Raw* dlRead request; the returned dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand field indicates the response code. If the dlRead return value is zero or positive, it indicates the number of bytes read; if it is less than zero, an error has occurred. BSC error codes that can be associated with the responses are returned in the pOptArgs.iICPStatus field and are described in [Appendix D](#). When applicable, the DLI sets the MSB of the pOptArgs.usProtCircuitID field to the control unit (CU) number, and the LSB to the device unit (DU) number.

Note

The use of *Normal* dlRead requests (that is, without the optional arguments parameter) is not recommended for BSC 3270 since error reports would be indistinguishable from data received from the remote application, and the application would be unable to determine the CU/DU in the request.

The following types of data can be returned from the ICP:

- Normal and transparent received data
- BSC 3270 sense/status messages
- Error and confirmation responses
- Acknowledgments (if the localAck DLI configuration parameter is set to “no”)
- Reports in response to dlWrite information requests

Table 3–10: BSC 3270 Response Codes

Category	DLI Response Code in pOptArgs.usProtCommand Field	Usage	Section
Received Data	DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA	Normal received data	Section 3.5.1
	DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA_EOM	Normal received data (end of message)	Section 3.5.1
	DLI_PROT_SEND_TRANS_DATA	Transparent received data	Section 3.5.1
	DLI_PROT_SEND_TRANS_DATA_EOM	Transparent received data (end of message)	Section 3.5.1
Sense/Status Message	DLI_PROT_SEND_PRIOR_DATA_EOM	BSC 3270 sense/status message	Section 3.5.2
Errors ^a	DLI_PROT_RESP_ERROR	Error report; the dlRead pOptArgs. iICPStatus field contains more infor- mation.	Appendix D
Acknowledg- ments	DLI_PROT_RESP_LOCAL_ACK	Acknowledgment that a transmission buffer has been sent (if the pOptArgs. iICPStatus field = 1). If it is less than zero, an error has occurred.	Section 3.4.3.1 and Section 3.4.3.2
	DLI_PROT_RESP_BIND_ACK	Acknowledgment of Start Link com- mand	Section 3.4.1.5
	DLI_PROT_RESP_UNBIND_ACK	Acknowledgment of Stop Link com- mand	Section 3.4.1.6
	DLI_PROT_SAFE_STORE_ACK	Safe store acknowledge: 1) the last data block has been successfully acknowledged by the remote com- puter, or 2) the safe store option was switched from <i>disable</i> to <i>enable</i> while the link was active.	Section 3.4.1.8
Command Confirmations	DLI_PROT_SET_TRANS_TABLE	Set Translation Table confirmation	Section 3.4.1.1
	DLI_PROT_CLR_STATISTICS	Clear Statistics confirmation	Section 3.4.1.2
	DLI_PROT_SET_BUF_SIZE	Set ICP Message Buffer Size confirm	Section 3.4.1.3
	DLI_PROT_CFG_LINK	Configure Link confirmation	Section 3.4.1.4
	DLI_PROT_SET_POLL_LIST	Set Poll List confirmation	Section 3.4.1.7
	DLI_PROT_SET_SPECIAL_POLL	BSC 3270 Special Poll confirmation	Section 3.4.1.9
	DLI_PROT_SEND_EOT	Send EOT confirmation	Section 3.4.1.10
	DLI_PROT_CREATE_DEVICE	Create Virtual Device confirmation	Section 3.4.1.11
	DLI_PROT_CHANGE_STATUS	Change Virtual Device Status confirm	Section 3.4.1.12

Table 3–10: BSC 3270 Response Codes (*Cont'd*)

Category	DLI Response Code in pOptArgs.usProtCommand Field	Usage	Section
Reports	DLI_PROT_GET_BUF_REPORT	Buffer report	Section 3.4.2.1
	DLI_PROT_GET_LINK_CFG	Link configuration report	Section 3.4.2.2
	DLI_PROT_GET_STATISTICS_REPORT	Statistics report	Section 3.4.2.3
	DLI_PROT_GET_STATUS_REPORT	Link status report	Section 3.4.2.4
	DLI_PROT_GET_TRANS_TABLE	Translation table report	Section 3.4.2.5
	DLI_PROT_GET_SOFTWARE_VER	Software version ID report	Section 3.4.2.6
	DLI_PROT_GET_POLL_LIST	BSC 3270 poll list report	Section 3.4.2.7
	DLI_PROT_GET_DEVICE_STATUS	BSC 3270 device status report	Section 3.4.2.8

^a All of the responses, as well as the error report, can return an error code in dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus field

3.5.1 Normal and Transparent Received Data

The BSC 3270 software provides four read codes for data reception: two for normal data (DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA and DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA_EOM) and two for transparent data (DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA and DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA). For efficiency, normal data sometimes contains multiple messages from the serial lines in a single message buffer.

3.5.2 BSC 3270 Sense/Status Message

When a control station receives a BSC 3270 sense/status message from a tributary link, it reports that message to the client. The client application performs a `dlRead` request and receives a data message with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_SEND_PRIOR_DATA_EOM`. The format of the message is:

% R S/S0 S/S1

where `S/S0` and `S/S1` represent the device status bytes. See [Section A.4.4 on page 204](#) regarding BSC 3270 sense/status messages for virtual devices.

3.5.3 Error, Confirmation, and Acknowledgment Responses

[Table 3–10](#) lists the possible BSC 3270 error, confirmation, and acknowledgment response codes returned in the `dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field. All of the responses, as well as the `DLI_PROT_RESP_ERROR` error report, can return an error code in the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field to indicate failure.

3.5.4 Reports in Response to dlWrite Information Requests

After issuing a `dlWrite` information request ([Section 3.4.2](#)), a `dlRead` request must be issued to receive the report information. The reports are listed in [Table 3–10](#).

BSC 3270 Link Configuration Options

Note

This chapter, along with [Chapter 3](#) and [Appendix A](#), should be read by programmers who are interfacing an application program to a BSC 3270 environment. If you are programming BSC 2780/3780, refer to [Chapter 5](#), [Chapter 6](#), and [Appendix B](#).

This chapter describes the various link configuration options that can be set using the DLI configuration file described in [Section 7.2 on page 188](#). Alternatively, the link options can be set using the `dlWrite Configure Link` command as described in [Section 3.4.1.4 on page 59](#).

[Table 4–1](#) lists all the available options in numerical order along with the allowed settings and defaults. The defaults are in effect immediately after the protocol software is downloaded to the ICP. They remain in effect until you either modify the DLI configuration file and redownload the ICP, or send a `dlWrite Configure Link` command.

Note

Link configuration options can be set only when the link being configured is stopped.

Some of the possible error conditions are discussed in the following sections, as they relate to using each configuration option. [Appendix D](#) explains BSC error handling and gives a list of errors.

Table 4–1: BSC 3270 Link Configuration Options and Settings

Option	Number	Value	Default (✓)	Setting
Data Rate (bits/second)	1	0		75
		1		110
		2		135
		3		150
		4		300
		5		600
		6		1200
		7		2400
		8		4800
		9	✓	9600
		10		19200
		11		38400
Clock Source	2	0	✓	External
		1		Internal
Reply Timer Length	3	<i>n</i>	3	<i>n</i> = number of seconds (1 to 1800)
Number of Leading Sync Characters	4	<i>n</i>	3	<i>n</i> = sync chars (2 to 8)
Protocol	5	1	✓	3270
Parity	6	0		None
		1	✓	Odd
		2		Even
Character Set	7	0	✓	ASCII/LRC-8
		1		EBCDIC/CRC-16
Transmission Block Size	8	<i>n</i>	512	<i>n</i> = size in bytes (64 to 4096)
Data Translation	10	0		Disable
		1	✓	Table 1
		2		Table 2
Station Priority	11	0		Tributary station (slave)
		1	✓	Control station (master)

Table 4–1: BSC 3270 Link Configuration Options and Settings (*Cont'd*)

Option	Number	Value	Default (✓)	Setting
Conversational Mode	13	0	✓	Disable
		1		Enable
Retry Limit	14	<i>n</i>	3	<i>n</i> = number of retries (1 to 127)
Poll List Delay	15	<i>n</i>	0	<i>n</i> = delay at end of master poll list in tenths of seconds (0 to 8192)
Modem Control	16	0		HDX-1
		1	✓	FDX-1
		2		HDX-2
		3		FDX-2
Safe Store	17	0	✓	Disable
		1		Enable
Station ID	18	<i>n</i>	0	<i>n</i> = CU number of tributary station (0 to 32)
Message Blocking	19	0		Disable
		1	✓	Data blocking
		2		Reserved
		3		Reserved
Block Checking	20	4		3270 commands
		0		Disable
		1	✓	Exclude first byte
Queue Limit	21	2		Include first byte
		0	✓	No limit
Read Session	23	<i>n</i>		Buffer limit (1 to 4096)
		0	✓	Disable
Interpoll Delay	25	1		Enable
		<i>n</i>	0	<i>n</i> = delay between polls in tenths of seconds (0 to 8192)

Table 4–1: BSC 3270 Link Configuration Options and Settings (*Cont'd*)

Option	Number	Value	Default (✓)	Setting
3270 Text Addressing	27	0		Disable
		1	✓	Normal
		2		Reserved
		3		Automatic printer emulation
		4		Device emulation
DSR/DCD Delay	30	<i>n</i>	3	<i>n</i> = reporting delay in seconds (1 to 127)
Electrical Interface (Freeway 1000 only)	40	0	✓	EIA-232
		1		EIA-485
		2		EIA-530/EIA-449 (balanced, EIA-422)
		3		V.35
		4		EIA-449 (unbalanced, EIA-423)
		5		EIA-562

4.1 Data Rate Option (1)

The data rate can be set by the client for installations where the communications server must generate the data clocking signal. If external clocking is provided by a modem or modem eliminator, the configuration of the data rate is not required. However, when transmitting data, the BSC software uses the data rate setting to calculate the amount of time to wait before aborting a transmission with the DLI_ICP_ERR_XMIT_TIMEOUT transmit timeout error. Therefore, if BSC is being used to transmit data, the data rate should be set to match, or be slower than, the modem clock rate.

The data rate on a link can be set from 75 through 56,000 bits/second. When using data rates above 19,200 bits/second, be careful not to overload the communications server processor. Freeway supports up to 16 links per ICP. The maximum link data rates are:

- 1 link at 56,000 b/s

- 4–8 links at 19,200 b/s
- 16 links for a 16-port ICP at 9600 b/s

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `dataRate` parameter; for example, `dataRate = 9600`. See [Table 7–1 on page 190](#).

4.2 Clock Source Option (2)

The clock source option determines the source of the data clock signals for a link. Data clocking can be provided by the BSC software or received from an external source.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `clockSource` parameter; for example, `clockSource = "external"`. See [Table 7–1 on page 190](#).

4.2.1 External

Proagate recommends the *external* clock setting for most communications applications that involve a cable length greater than 25 feet. In the external setting, the clock generator is disabled. Data clocking must be supplied by an external source such as a modem or modem eliminator. Receive clocking is input through the receiver timing signal (EIA-232 pin 17), and transmit clocking is input through the transmitter timing signal (EIA-232 pin 15). Your Freeway server is factory configured for *external* clocking using a hardware jumper.

4.2.2 Internal

When the *internal* clock setting is used, the clock signal is generated at the rate specified in the data rate option ([Section 4.1](#)). The generated clock signal is used for transmit clocking and is output on the terminal timing signal (EIA-232 pin 24). Receive clocking is input through the receiver timing signal (EIA-232 pin 17). The transmitter timing signal (EIA-232 pin 15) is not used. Your Freeway server is factory configured for *exter-*

nal clocking using a hardware jumper. If you need to set *internal* clocking, call the Pro-togate customer support number given in the *Preface*.

4.3 Reply Timer Length Option (3)

The reply time is the length of time in seconds that the BSC 3270 software waits for the remote station to reply to a transmission. The transmission may be a poll, select, or data block. If the remote station does not respond within the timeout period, the BSC software repeats the transmission up to the number of times allowed by the retry limit option ([Section 4.12](#)) before aborting with the DLI_ICP_ERR_RETRY_EXCEEDED retry limit error. This option also controls the length of time BSC waits in receive mode before sending ENQ to the remote station.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `replyTimerLen` parameter; for example, `replyTimerLen = 3`. See [Table 7–1 on page 190](#).

4.4 Number of Leading SYN Characters Option (4)

This option specifies the number of SYN characters to precede all transmitted data blocks. Certain links may require more SYN characters to ensure synchronization on poor-quality lines. The minimum number of leading SYN characters is two; the maximum number is eight. This option does not affect the number of SYN characters preceding the EOT part of a poll or select sequence. That number is fixed at two SYN characters.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `numLeadSync` parameter; for example, `numLeadSync = 3`. See [Table 7–1 on page 190](#).

4.5 Protocol Option (5)

This option indicates the protocol used on the ICP and has only one setting (“BSC3270”). This setting is reported in the configuration report ([Section 3.4.2.2 on](#)

[page 72](#)) which can be used by client application programs to verify the protocol running on the ICP.

The DLI configuration program ([Chapter 7](#)) considers this protocol option to be protocol-independent, but it must be set to “BSC3270” in order to select the BSC 3270 protocol. This parameter must be set prior to any attempt to assign another BSC 3270 configuration option within a session definition (see [Figure 7–2 on page 189](#)); otherwise the DLI configuration program will fail.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `protocol` parameter; for example, `protocol = “BSC3270”`. See [Table 7–1 on page 190](#).

4.6 Parity Option (6)

When using the ASCII/LRC-8 character set, this option controls the setting of bit 7 of each character. Parity can be set to *odd*, *even*, or *none* (space parity). Any transmission containing a parity error is detected by the receiver hardware, and the appropriate error recovery is taken by the BSC software. If no parity is selected, bit 7 is set to zero for all transmitted characters. Parity is automatically disabled when the EBCDIC character set is used. The parity used for ASCII transmission is normally odd.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `parity` parameter; for example, `parity = “odd”`. See [Table 7–1 on page 190](#).

4.7 Character Set Option (7)

This option determines the character code for the BSC control sequences used on the transmission line. It also determines what type of block checking is done on data blocks.

When this option is set to *ASCII/LRC-8*, the BSC control sequences are transmitted in 7-bit ASCII format, and LRC-8 block checking is performed.

When the *EBCDIC/CRC-16* setting is used, the BSC control sequences are transmitted in 8-bit EBCDIC, and the CRC-16 block check polynomial is used. The parity option is ignored when using EBCDIC/CRC-16.

The BSC software transmits ASCII control characters on the line with space parity when you select *no parity* ([Section 4.6](#)).

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `charSet` parameter; for example, `charSet = "asciilrc8"`. See [Table 7–1 on page 190](#).

4.8 Transmission Block Size Option (8)

The BSC software has transmission buffers fixed at 4,096 bytes. Each link has one transmit buffer and one receive buffer. You can define the maximum amount of the 4,096 bytes that the BSC software can transmit as one block on the communication line by setting the transmission block size from 64 to 4,096 bytes. The BSC software, however, can receive blocks up to 4,096 bytes regardless of the setting of this option. See [Section 2.1.4 on page 35](#) for more information on transmission blocks.

The size of the transmission block includes the bisynchronous text control characters as well as the data characters. For example, a transmission block size of 512 bytes consists of 510 bytes of data plus two control characters (STX and ETX). SYN, DLE, PAD, and BCC characters are not included in the transmission block size count. The BSC software automatically inserts all control characters in the transmission block. If the remote station sends a transmission block that is larger than 4,096 bytes, the BSC software sends a NAK response to the transmission and returns the `DLI_ICP_ERR_BUF_OVERFLOW` buffer overrun error to the client along with all the data which was successfully received.

The size of message buffers from the client is independent of the transmission block size. The ICP message buffer size is controlled by the Set ICP Message Buffer Size command ([Section 3.4.1.3 on page 58](#)). Messages to be transmitted that are greater than the transmission block size are broken into smaller messages and sent separately.

For messages received on the communication line, the ICP message buffer size (Section 3.4.1.3 on page 58) is the maximum size that can be received; otherwise, the DLI_ICP_ERR_BUF_OVERFLOW error code is sent to the client application.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `transBlkSize` parameter; for example, `transBlkSize = 512`. See Table 7–1 on page 190.

4.9 Data Translation Option (10)

This option invokes transmit and receive data translation using one of the two onboard ASCII/EBCDIC translation tables described in Appendix C, either of which can be changed by issuing a Set Translation Table command (Section 3.4.1.1 on page 57). This option is enabled only when the character set option (Section 4.7) is set to *EBCDIC*.

If this option is set to *disable* and the character set option is set to *EBCDIC*, no data translation is performed, but EBCDIC control sequences are used on the line. In this case, the client application program is responsible for performing any necessary data translation.

When one of the translation tables is selected, data translation is enabled. Data blocks from the client are treated as ASCII data and are translated into EBCDIC before they are transmitted on the communication line. Conversely, data blocks received from the line are treated as EBCDIC and are translated to ASCII before they are sent to the client. No translation is done on transparent data blocks.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `dataTranslation` parameter; for example, `dataTranslation = "table1"`. See Table 7–1 on page 190.

4.10 Station Priority Option (11)

This option enables the data link to operate as either a control station or a tributary station. If the link is configured as a control station, BSC 3270 performs polling and selection of tributary stations. If the link is configured as a tributary station, it responds only

to the poll and select sequences that match the CU number configured with the station ID ([Section 4.16](#)).

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `stationPri` parameter; for example, `stationPri = "master"`. See [Table 7–1 on page 190](#).

4.11 Conversational Mode Option (13)

Conversational mode allows a remote station to respond to an ETX block with a data block, instead of responding with an ACK and waiting for line turnaround. If this option is set to *enable*, conversational data responses are sent (when possible) on the line. If this option is set to *disable*, conversational responses are not sent; however, the BSC software always accepts conversational data responses received on the communication line, regardless of the setting of this option.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `convMode` parameter; for example, `convMode = "no"`. See [Table 7–1 on page 190](#).

4.12 Retry Limit Option (14)

This option sets the number of times the BSC software repeats a transmission when the correct response is not received from the remote station. If the correct response is not received within the specified number of retries, BSC resets the data link to the idle state (sends EOT) and returns all pending write messages to the client using the `DLI_PROT_RESP_LOCAL_ACK` data acknowledgment response with the `dlRead.pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field set to the `DLI_ICP_ERR_RETRY_EXCEEDED` error.

The retry limit applies to the following BSC transmissions:

- Poll and select sequences
- Data block transmission (STX—ETB/ETX)
- Request for response (ENQ) if there is no response

In some situations the remote computer may send a WACK (wait acknowledge) sequence instead of the expected response (ACK0 or ACK1) to a transmitted data block. BSC transmits an ENQ in response to the received WACK. The WACK–ENQ sequences are not counted by BSC. Thus it is possible for the remote computer to prevent the DLI_ICP_ERR_RETRY_EXCEEDED error by sending WACK until it is ready to send the correct response.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `retryLimit` parameter; for example, `retryLimit = 3`. See [Table 7–1 on page 190](#).

4.13 Poll List Delay Option (15)

This option specifies the amount of time a control station delays upon reaching the end of the poll list. Delay time is specified in *tenths* of seconds and can range from zero (no delay) to 8192 (819.2 seconds). The poll list delay is in addition to any interpoll delay set ([Section 4.21](#)). This option is not used by links configured as tributary stations.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `pollListDelay` parameter; for example, `pollListDelay = 0`. See [Table 7–1 on page 190](#).

4.14 Modem Control Option (16)

This option determines the operation of the request to send (RTS), data set ready (DSR), and data carrier detect (DCD) modem signals. [Table 4–2](#) lists the possible settings for this option.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `modemControl` parameter; for example, `modemControl = "FDX1"`. See [Table 7–1 on page 190](#).

4.14.1 RTS Signal

When the modem control option is set to half-duplex operation (HDX-1 or HDX-2), the RTS signal is turned on when BSC is ready to transmit and turned off when trans-

Table 4–2: Modem Control Option Settings

Value	Setting	Description
0	HDX-1	Half duplex, monitor DSR
1	FDX-1	Full duplex, monitor DSR
2	HDX-2	Half duplex, ignore DSR and DCD
3	FDX-2	Full duplex, ignore DSR and DCD

mission is complete. In full-duplex operation (FDX-1 or FDX-2), the RTS signal is turned on when the link is started and stays on until the link is stopped. In all cases, transmission does not start until a clear to send (CTS) signal is received by the BSC software.

4.14.2 DSR Signal

The modem control option allows a link to monitor the data set ready (DSR) signal. With either the HDX-1 or FDX-1 setting, line activity ceases when the signal on the DSR pin is lost. With either the HDX-2 or FDX-2 setting, the incoming DSR and DCD signals are ignored by the BSC software. The HDX-2 and FDX-2 settings are useful for half-duplex modems that toggle the DSR signal during normal link operation, or when DSR may not be present. In all cases, CTS is used for permission to send data.

4.14.3 DCD Signal

The modem control option allows a link to use the data carrier detect (DCD) signal as DSR. With either the HDX-2 or FDX-2 setting, incoming DCD signals are ignored by the BSC software.

4.15 Safe Store Option (17)

The safe store option enables or disables the safe store capability of the BSC software. See [Section 3.4.1.8 on page 64](#) for more information about safe store.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `safeStore` parameter; for example, `safeStore = "no"`. See [Table 7–1 on page 190](#).

4.16 Station ID Option (18)

This option determines the control unit number of a tributary station. Control units range from 0 to 31. If the station ID is set to 32, the tributary station enters “test mode.” See [Section A.2.2 on page 196](#). This option is not used by links configured as control stations.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `stationID` parameter; for example, `stationID = 0`. See [Table 7–1 on page 190](#).

4.17 Message Blocking Option (19)

This option controls the logical blocking and deblocking of data between message buffers and transmission blocks during normal link operation. Normally, the ICP message buffer size ([Section 3.4.1.3 on page 58](#)) is configured to be much larger than the transmission block size ([Section 4.8](#)), but this does not have to be true in order for message blocking to work. See [Section 2.1.4 on page 35](#) for more information on message buffers and transmission blocks.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `messageBlocking` parameter; for example, `messageBlocking = "dataBlk"`. See [Table 7–1 on page 190](#).

Note

When transparent data is received, blocking acts as if message blocking is set to *disable*.

4.17.1 Blocking Disabled

If the message blocking option is set to *disable*, blocking/deblocking is not performed. For inbound data, each received transmission block is treated as a separate message

buffer to the client. For outbound data, each message buffer is transmitted on the line as a separate transmission block. If the ICP message buffer size is larger than the maximum transmission block size, BSC 3270 performs message deblocking until the entire message buffer is transmitted.

4.17.2 Data Blocking

If the message blocking option is set to *data blocking*, BSC 3270 performs logical blocking of inbound data and logical deblocking of outbound data without regard to any embedded data records. For example, assume the ICP message buffer size is 4096 bytes and the transmission block size is 512 bytes. If the client sends a 1024-byte message, BSC sends that message in three separate transmission blocks (512, 512, and 6). Note that the third 6-byte block is necessary since the transmission block count includes the control characters STX and ETX.

Caution

When you set message blocking to *data blocking*, the BSC software can concatenate non-EOM message buffers from the client into the transmission buffer if all the following are true:

1. The transmit buffer is not full.
2. The BSC software has another message buffer queued for transmission.
3. The client is sending the data in non-transparent mode.

Concatenation depends on the timing of the message buffers the client queues. It does not always occur.

4.17.3 3270 Command Blocking

If this option is set to *3270 commands*, BSC 3270 scans all outbound messages for escape characters (ESC) which signify the start of a 3270 display screen command. BSC 3270

then deblocks the message such that the 3270 command strings are not split across transmission block boundaries.

4.18 Block Checking Option (20)

This option determines what characters are included in the block check character (BCC) calculation on transmitted and received data blocks. If the received block check character does not match the BCC value calculated by BSC, the DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_BCC error code is returned to the client application. Block checking can be set to include or exclude the leading BSC control character or can be disabled completely.

If the option is set to *exclude*, the BCC calculation starts with the first data character following STX. This is the normal BSC mode of BCC calculation.

If the option is set to *include*, the STX is included in the BCC calculation for transmitted and received data blocks.

If the option is set to *disable*, a block check character is still generated on transmit and expected on receive, but the receive BCC comparison is not performed and each received data block is sent to the client without regard to any possible error. The BCC calculation is done on transmitted blocks as if the option is set to *exclude*.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `blockChecking` parameter; for example, `blockChecking = "exclFirst"`. See [Table 7–1 on page 190](#).

Note

When transmitting non-transparent text, embedded SYN characters are not included in the outbound BCC calculation.

4.19 Queue Limit Option (21)

The queue limit option is used to prevent the ICP message buffer pool from being exhausted. Message buffers for all links on the ICP are taken from the same memory pool. This method allows each link to draw buffers as demand increases. However, if a process in the client were to stop reading on one link without disabling the link, incoming messages could deplete the buffer supply and the other links would not be able to obtain buffers.

To prevent this from occurring, a queue limit can be placed on the BSC-to-client message queue for a particular link. When the queue limit is reached, the last buffer on the queue is marked with the `DLI_ICP_ERR_QFULL` error code, and all subsequent blocks from the link are discarded until the client program begins reading messages from the queue. BSC sends NAK for all data blocks that cannot be put on the queue. Control blocks such as data acknowledge, status report, etc. that cannot be placed on the queue, are discarded. When the client program receives the `DLI_ICP_ERR_QFULL` error, it should check the sequence number to determine how much data, if any, was lost.

The client program specifies the maximum number of buffers to be placed in the BSC-to-client queue for a particular link. The queue limit applies to all sessions for a given link. For example, if a queue limit of ten is set on a link that has a *Master* and a *Control* session established, the BSC software queues ten master buffers and ten control buffers. The queue limit is also independent for each type of session; for example, if the *Master* session has all ten buffers queued and waiting to be read, this does not affect the *Control* session's ten-buffer limit.

Specify a zero value to disable queue limiting for a link.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `qLimit` parameter; for example, `qLimit = 0`. See [Table 7–1 on page 190](#).

4.20 Read Session Option (23)

The read session option determines what happens on the line when data is received on a link for which there is no *Read* session ([Section 2.2 on page 35](#)) currently attached. Under ordinary circumstances a link has a *Manager* session reading incoming data and transmitting outgoing data, or it has a *Manager* session sending data and a *Read* session receiving incoming data. If the *Read* session for a particular link doesn't exist, and this option is set to *disable* (the default setting), incoming data blocks are routed to the *Manager* session for that link. If the option is set to *enable*, and the *Read* session for a given link is non-existent, incoming data blocks are NAK'd, and any buffers currently queued for the *Read* session are dequeued and discarded. When a *Read* session is resumed on that link, incoming data is sent to the *Read* session as is done normally.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `readSession` parameter; for example, `readSession = "no"`. See [Table 7–1 on page 190](#).

4.21 Interpoll Delay Option (25)

This BSC 3270 option determines the amount of time a control station delays after each general poll. The setting value is an integer between 0 (no delay) and 8192 where each unit represents a delay of a tenth of a second.

For a tributary station, this option controls the time to wait between polls from the control station. After responding to a poll or select, the tributary station starts the interpoll timer for the specified amount of time. If another poll or select is not received before the timer expires, the tributary sends the `DLI_ICP_ERR_STATION_DOWN` error report to the client. On receipt of the next valid poll or select, the tributary sends the `DLI_ICP_ERR_STATION_UP` error report and restarts the timer. A setting of zero disables the station up/down reporting for the tributary station.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `interpollDelay` parameter; for example, `interpollDelay = 0`. See [Table 7–1 on page 190](#).

4.22 3270 Text Addressing Option (27)

This BSC 3270 option determines whether IBM 3270 embedded addressing is performed on inbound and outbound messages. The IBM 3274 cluster controller inserts the address for the control unit (CU) and device in the first two bytes following STX of the first block of a data or status message as follows:

3270 Data Message	3270 Status Message
STX	SOH
CU address	%
Device address	R
Text	STX
ETX or ETB	CU address
BCC	Device address
	Status bytes
	ETX
	BCC

If this option is set to *disable*, embedded address insertion and deletion is not performed.

If this option is set to *normal*, a link configured as a tributary (3274 cluster controller) automatically inserts the CU and device addresses into the first block of outbound messages. The addresses are derived from the CU and device number bytes in the `dIWrite pOptArgs.usProtCircuitID` field. A link configured as a control station (3705 communications controller) extracts the embedded addresses from inbound messages. These addresses are used to determine the CU and device number associated with the inbound message.

If this option is set to *automatic printer emulation*, 3270 command checking is performed, device status is kept, and printer emulation is performed. When a link using this setting receives a valid 3270 write, erase/write, or erase/write alternate command

with the “start print” bit set in the write control character (WCC), the link responds to the data block with WACK instead of ACK. It then queues up a “device end” sense/status message to send in response to the next general poll received from the master. See [Section A.4.3 on page 200](#) for more information on 3270 command checking. See [Section A.4.4 on page 204](#) for more information on sense/status messages.

If this option is set to *device emulation*, 3270 command checking is performed, device status is kept, and device address embedding is performed. This setting is used in applications that emulate IBM 3270 printers or displays. See [Section A.4.3 on page 200](#) for more information on 3270 command checking.

Note

The setting of this option applies to all of the control units configured on a multiple CU link. For example, if a link is configured for control units 0 and 1, it is not possible to have control unit 0 operating under the IBM 3270 setting (*enable*) and control unit 1 operating under the *device emulation* setting at the same time.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `textAddr` parameter; for example, `textAddr = "normal"`. See [Table 7–1 on page 190](#).

4.23 DSR/DCD Delay Option (30)

This option determines the delay in seconds between the time BSC detects a loss of the data set ready (DSR) or the data carrier detect (DCD) modem signal (depending on the setting of the modem control option, [Section 4.14](#)) and the time this loss is reported to the client application program. This option is designed for use in systems where momentary losses of the DSR/DCD signal are common.

When the BSC software detects a loss of the DSR/DCD signal, it delays for the specified number of seconds before reporting the loss with the `DLI_ICP_ERR_DSR_DOWN` error

report. If the signal returns before the delay time expires, the timer is reset and no report is made.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `dsrDelay` parameter; for example, `dsrDelay = 3`. See [Table 7–1 on page 190](#).

4.24 Electrical Interface Option (40)

The electrical interface option applies to the Freeway 1000 model only and allows the electrical interface for each link to be set. The valid values are EIA-232 (default), EIA-485, EIA-530/EIA-449 (balanced, EIA-422), V.35, EIA-449 (unbalanced, EIA-423), and EIA-562. Refer to the *ICP2424 Hardware Description and Theory of Operation* guide for more information on electrical interfaces and cabling options.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `elecInterface` parameter; for example, `elecInterface = "EIA232"`. See [Table 7–1 on page 190](#).

BSC 2780/3780 DLI Functions

Note

In this chapter, the DLI functions apply to both a Freeway server or an embedded ICP using DLITE. For the embedded ICP, also refer to the user's guide for your ICP and operating system (for example, the *ICP2432 User's Guide for Windows NT (DLITE Interface)*).

Note

This chapter, along with [Chapter 6](#) and [Appendix B](#), should be read by programmers who are interfacing an application program to a BSC 2780/3780 environment. If you are programming BSC 3270, refer to [Chapter 3](#), [Chapter 4](#), and [Appendix A](#).

This chapter describes how to use the data link interface (DLI) functions to write client applications interfacing to the Freeway BSC 2780/3780 protocol software. You should be familiar with the concepts described in the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide*; however, some summary information is provided in [Section 5.1](#).

The following might be helpful references while reading this chapter:

- [Section 5.2](#) compares a typical sequence of DLI function calls using blocking versus non-blocking I/O.

- [Appendix D](#) explains error handling and provides a summary table of BSC error codes. The *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide* gives complete DLI error code descriptions.
- The *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide* provides a generic code example which can guide your application program development, along with the programs described in [Appendix E](#) of this manual.

5.1 Summary of DLI Concepts

The DLI presents a consistent, high-level, common interface across multiple clients, operating systems, and transport services. It implements functions that permit your application to use data link services to access, configure, establish and terminate sessions, and transfer data across multiple data link protocols. The DLI concepts are described in detail in the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide*. This section summarizes the basic information.

5.1.1 Configuration in the Freeway Environment

Several items must be configured before a client application can run in the Freeway environment:

- Freeway server configuration
- data link interface (DLI) session configuration
- transport subsystem interface (TSI) connection configuration
- protocol-specific ICP link configuration

The Freeway server is normally configured only once, during the installation procedures described in the *Freeway Server User's Guide*. DLI session and TSI connection configurations are defined by specifying parameters in DLI and TSI ASCII configuration files and then running two preprocessor programs, `dlicfg` and `tsicfg`, to create

binary configuration files. Refer to [Chapter 7](#) of this document, as well as the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide* and the *Freeway Transport Subsystem Interface Reference Guide*.

ICP link configuration can be performed using any of the following methods:

- The `dlOpen` function can configure the ICP links during the DLI session establishment process using the default ICP link configuration values provided by the protocol software.
- You can specify ICP link parameters in the DLI ASCII configuration file and then run the `dlcfg` preprocessor program (see [Chapter 7](#)). The `dlOpen` function uses the resulting DLI binary configuration file to perform the link configuration during the DLI session establishment process.
- You can perform ICP link configuration within the client application (described in [Section 5.4.1.4](#)). This method is useful if you need to change link configuration without exiting the application.

5.1.2 Normal versus Raw Operation

There are two choices for the protocol DLI configuration parameter:

- A session is opened for *Normal* operation if you set `protocol` to a specific protocol (for example, “BSC3780”); then the DLI software configures the ICP links using the values in the DLI configuration file and transparently handles all headers and I/O.
- A session is opened for *Raw* operation if you set `protocol` to “raw”; then your application must handle all configuration, headers, and I/O details. *Raw* operation is recommended for data transfer where responses might be received out of sequence (especially in BSC 3270). Refer to the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide* if you need to use *Raw* operation.

Normal and *Raw* operations can be mixed. For example, the client application session can be configured for *Normal* operation (allowing DLI to handle link startup and configuration), but the read and write requests ([Section 5.4 on page 115](#) and [Section 5.5 on page 150](#)) can use *Raw* operation by including the optional arguments structure containing the protocol-specific information ([Section 5.3.1 on page 114](#)).

Note

The protocol-specific `writeType` DLI configuration parameter ([Table 7–2 on page 191](#)) specifies the type of data to be sent on the line (normal or transparent). This parameter should not be confused with *Normal* operation.

5.1.3 Blocking versus Non-blocking I/O

Note

Earlier Freeway releases used the term “synchronous” for blocking I/O and “asynchronous” for non-blocking I/O. Some parameter names reflect the previous terminology.

Non-blocking I/O applications are useful when doing I/O to multiple channels with a single process where it is not possible to “block” on any one channel waiting for I/O completion. Blocking I/O applications are useful when it is reasonable to have the calling process wait for I/O completion.

In the Freeway environment, the term blocking I/O indicates that the `dlOpen`, `dlClose`, `dlRead` and `dlWrite` functions do not return until the I/O is complete. For non-blocking I/O, these functions might return after the I/O has been queued at the client, but before the transfer to Freeway is complete. The client must handle I/O completions at the software interrupt level in the completion handler established by the `dlInit` or `dlOpen` function, or by periodic use of `dlPoll` to query the I/O completion status.

The asyncIO DLI configuration parameter specifies whether an application session uses blocking or non-blocking I/O. The alwaysQIO DLI configuration parameter further qualifies the operation of non-blocking I/O activity. Refer to the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide* for more information.

The effects on different DLI functions, resulting from the choice of blocking or non-blocking I/O, are explained in the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide* and throughout this chapter as they relate to BSC 2780/3780.

5.1.4 Buffer Management

Currently the interrelated Freeway, DLI, TSI and ICP buffers default to a size of 1024 bytes.

Caution

If you need to change a buffer size for your application, refer to the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide* for explanations of the complexities that you must consider.

5.2 Example BSC 2780/3780 Call Sequences

[Table 5–1](#) shows the sequence of DLI function calls to send and receive data using blocking I/O. [Table 5–2](#) is the non-blocking I/O example. The remainder of this chapter and the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide* give further information about each function call.

Note

The example call sequences assume that the `cfgLink` and `enable DLI` configuration parameters are both set to “yes” (the defaults). This means that `dlOpen` configures and enables the ICP links. [Figure 7–2 on page 189](#) shows an example DLI configuration file.

Table 5–1: DLI Call Sequence for BSC 2780/3780 (Blocking I/O)

-
1. Call `dlInit` to initialize the DLI operating environment. The first parameter is your DLI binary configuration file name.
 2. Call `dlOpen` for each required session (link) to get a session ID.
 3. Call `dlBufAlloc` for all required input and output buffers.
 4. Call `dlWrite` to send requests and data to Freeway ([Section 5.4 on page 115](#)).
 5. Call `dlRead` to receive responses and data from Freeway ([Section 5.5 on page 150](#)).
 6. Repeat Step 4 and Step 5 until you are finished writing and reading.
 7. Call `dlBufFree` for all buffers allocated in Step 3.
 8. Call `dlClose` for each session ID obtained in Step 2.
 9. Call `dlTerm` to terminate your application's access to Freeway.
-

Caution

When using non-blocking I/O, a `dlRead` request must always be queued to avoid loss of data or responses from the ICP (see Step 5 of [Table 5–2](#)).

Table 5–2: DLI Call Sequence for BSC 2780/3780 (Non-blocking I/O)

-
1. Call `dlInit` to initialize the DLI operating environment. The first parameter is your DLI binary configuration file name.
 2. Call `dlOpen` for each required session (link) to get a session ID.
 3. Call `dlPoll` to confirm the success of each session ID obtained in Step 2.
 4. Call `dlBufAlloc` for all required input and output buffers.
 5. Call `dlRead` to queue the initial read request.
 6. Call `dlWrite` to send requests and data to Freeway ([Section 5.4 on page 115](#)).
 7. Call `dlRead` to queue reads to receive responses and data from Freeway ([Section 5.5 on page 150](#)).
 8. As I/Os complete and the I/O completion handler is invoked, call `dlPoll` to confirm the success of each `dlWrite` in Step 6 and to accept the data from each `dlRead` in Step 7.
 9. Repeat Step 6 through Step 8 until you are finished writing and reading.
 10. Call `dlBufFree` for all buffers allocated in Step 4.
 11. Call `dlClose` for each session ID obtained in Step 2.
 12. Call `dlPoll` to confirm that each session was closed in Step 11.
 13. Call `dlTerm` to terminate your application's access to Freeway.
-

5.3 Overview of DLI Functions for BSC 2780/3780

This section summarizes the DLI functions used in writing a client application. An overview of using the DLI functions is:

- Start up communications (dlInit, dlOpen, dlBufAlloc)
- Send requests and data using dlWrite
- Receive responses using dlRead
- For blocking I/O, use dlSyncSelect to query read availability status for multiple sessions
- For non-blocking I/O, handle I/O completions at the software interrupt level in the completion handler established by the dlInit or dlOpen function, or by periodic use of dlPoll to query the I/O completion status
- Monitor errors using dlpErrString
- If necessary, reset and download the protocol software to the ICP using dlControl
- Shut down communications (dlBufFree, dlClose, dlTerm)

[Table 5–3](#) summarizes the DLI function syntax and parameters, listed in the most likely calling order. Refer to the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide* for details.

Caution

When using non-blocking I/O, there must always be at least one dlRead request queued to avoid loss of data or responses from the ICP.

Table 5–3: DLI Functions: Syntax and Parameters (Listed in Typical Call Order)

DLI Function	Parameter(s)	Parameter Usage
int dlInit	(char *cfgFile, char *pUsrCb, int (*fUsrIOCH)(char *pUsrCb));	DLI binary configuration file name Optional I/O complete control block Optional IOCH and parameter
int dlOpen ¹	(char *cSessionName, int (*fUsrIOCH) (char *pUsrCB, int iSessionID));	Session name in DLI config file Optional I/O completion handler Parameters for IOCH
int dlPoll	(int iSessionID, int iPollType, char **ppBuf, int *piBufLen, char *pStat, DLI_OPT_ARGS **ppOptArgs);	Session ID from dlOpen Request type Poll type dependent buffer Size of I/O buffer (bytes) Status or configuration buffer Optional arguments
int dlpErrString	(int dlErrNo);	DLI error number (global variable dlerrno)
char *dlBufAlloc	(int iBufLen);	Minimum buffer size
int dlRead	(int iSessionID, char **ppBuf, int iBufLen, DLI_OPT_ARGS *pOptArgs);	Session ID from dlOpen Buffer to receive data Maximum bytes to be returned Optional arguments structure
int dlWrite	(int iSessionID, char *pBuf, int iBufLen, int iWritePriority, DLI_OPT_ARGS *pOptArgs);	Session ID from dlOpen Source buffer for write Number of bytes to write Write priority (normal or expedite) Optional arguments structure
int dlSyncSelect	(int iNbrSessID, int sessIDArray[], int readStatArray[]);	Number of session IDs Packed array of session IDs Array containing read status for IDs
char *dlBufFree	(char *pBuf);	Buffer to return to pool
int dlClose	(int iSessionID, int iCloseMode);	Session ID from dlOpen Mode (normal or force)
int dlTerm	(void);	
int dlControl	(char *cSessionName, int iCommand, int (*fUsrIOCH) (char *pUsrCB, int iSessionID));	Session name in DLI config file Command (e.g. reset/download) Optional I/O completion handler Parameters for IOCH

¹ It is critical for the client application to receive the dlOpen completion status before making any other DLI requests; otherwise, subsequent requests will fail. After the dlOpen completion, however, you do not have to maintain a one-to-one correspondence between DLI requests and dlRead requests.

5.3.1 DLI Optional Arguments

[Section 5.4](#) and [Section 5.5](#) describe the `dlWrite` and `dlRead` functions for a BSC 2780/3780 application. Both functions can use the optional arguments parameter to provide the protocol-specific information required for *Raw* operation ([Section 5.1.2](#)). The “C” definition of the optional arguments structure is shown in [Figure 5–1](#).

```
typedef struct      _DLI_OPT_ARGS
{
    unsigned short  usFWPacketType; /* FW_CONTROL or FW_DATA          */
    unsigned short  usFWCommand;    /* FW_ICP_WRITE, FW_ICP_WRITE_EXP  */
                                   /* or FW_ICP_READ                  */
    unsigned short  usFWStatus;
    unsigned short  usICPClientID;
    unsigned short  usICPServerID;
    unsigned short  usICPCommand; /* Required for start/stop cmds    */
    short           iICPStatus;   /* ICP return error code (dlRead)  */
    unsigned short  usICPParms[3];
    unsigned short  usProtCommand; /* Required field (dlWrite)        */
    short           iProtModifier;
    unsigned short  usProtLinkID;
    unsigned short  usProtCircuitID; /* Used for translation tables     */
    unsigned short  usProtSessionID;
    unsigned short  usProtSequence;
    unsigned short  usProtXParms[2];
} DLI_OPT_ARGS;
```

Figure 5–1: “C” Definition of DLI Optional Arguments Structure

5.4 Overview of BSC 2780/3780 Requests using dlWrite

For BSC 2780/3780 the dlWrite function supports three dlWrite categories: commands, information requests, and data transfer, which are discussed in detail in [Section 5.4.1](#) through [Section 5.4.3](#). Whether you use blocking or non-blocking I/O, each *Raw* dlWrite request must be followed by a dlRead request to receive the command confirmation, information requested, or acknowledgment of the data transfer. [Section 5.5](#) discusses these different responses received using dlRead.

In a typical BSC 2780/3780 application, some dlWrite requests use *Raw* operation; that is, the optional arguments structure ([page 114](#)) is required to specify protocol-specific information.

If your application is limited to interacting with Freeway only to exchange data with the remote application, you can read and write using *Normal* operation. The writeType DLI configuration parameter ([Table 7–2 on page 191](#)) specifies the type of data to be exchanged. If writeType is set to “normal,” normal data with EOM is used ([Section 5.4.3.1](#)); if writeType is set to “transparent,” transparent data with EOM is used ([Section 5.4.3.2](#)).

Caution

Take care not to confuse the terms “*Normal* operation” and “normal data.” Normal data can be sent using either *Normal* or *Raw* operation.

[Table 5–4](#) shows the BSC 2780/3780 DLI request codes for different categories of the dlWrite function. Each request is explained in the following sections.

In addition to the command-specific error codes listed in the following sections, an unsuccessful dlWrite function can return one of the following error codes in the dlRead pOptArgs.iCPStatus field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

DLI_ICP_ERR_INBUF_OVERFLOW Input buffer overflow

DLI_ICP_ERR_OUTBUF_OVERFLOW Output buffer overflow

Table 5–4: Categories for BSC 2780/3780 dlWrite Requests

Category	DLI Request Code	Usage
Commands to ICP	DLI_PROT_CFG_LINK	Configure link
	DLI_PROT_CLR_STATISTICS	Clear statistics
	DLI_PROT_FLUSH_QUEUE	Flush queue
	DLI_PROT_MODEM_CFG	Configure modem
	DLI_PROT_SAFE_STORE_ACK	Send safe store acknowledge
	DLI_PROT_SEND_BIND	Start link
	DLI_PROT_SEND_DISC	Send disconnect
	DLI_PROT_SEND_EOT	Send EOT
	DLI_PROT_SEND_SIGNON	Send signon
	DLI_PROT_SEND_UNBIND	Stop link
	DLI_PROT_SET_BUF_SIZE	Set ICP message buffer size
	DLI_PROT_SET_SPECIAL_POLL	Issue specific poll
	DLI_PROT_SET_TRANS_TABLE	Set translation table
	DLI_PROT_START_AUTODIAL	Start autodial
	DLI_PROT_START_LINK_TRACE	Start link trace
	DLI_PROT_STOP_LINK_TRACE	Stop link trace
Report Requests	DLI_PROT_GET_BUF_REPORT	Request buffer report
	DLI_PROT_GET_LINK_CFG	Request link configuration report
	DLI_PROT_GET_SOFTWARE_VER	Request software version ID
	DLI_PROT_GET_STATISTICS_REPORT	Request statistics report
	DLI_PROT_GET_STATUS_REPORT	Request status report
	DLI_PROT_GET_TRANS_TABLE	Request translation table

Table 5–4: Categories for BSC 2780/3780 dlWrite Requests (*Cont'd*)

Category	DLI Request Code	Usage
Data Transfer	DLI_PROT_SEND_HDR_DATA	Transmit header data
	DLI_PROT_SEND_HDR_DATA_EOM	Transmit header data with EOM
	DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA	Transmit normal data
	DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA_EOM	Transmit normal data with EOM ¹
	DLI_PROT_SEND_PRIOR_DATA	Transmit priority data
	DLI_PROT_SEND_PRIOR_DATA_EOM	Transmit priority data with EOM
	DLI_PROT_SEND_TRANS_DATA	Transmit transparent data
	DLI_PROT_SEND_TRANS_DATA_EOM	Transmit transparent data with EOM ^a
	DLI_PROT_SEND_2780_DATA	Transmit transparent 2780 record data
	DLI_PROT_SEND_2780_DATA_EOM	Transmit transparent 2780 record data with EOM

¹ If you use dlWrite without optional arguments, one of the EOM types is used, depending on the writeType DLI configuration parameter ([Table 7–2 on page 191](#)). If writeType is set to “normal,” DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA_EOM is used; if it is set to “transparent,” DLI_PROT_SEND_TRANS_DATA_EOM is used.

5.4.1 Commands using Raw dlWrite

[Section 5.4.1.1](#) through [Section 5.4.1.15](#) explain how to issue specific commands to the BSC 2780/3780 software using the dlWrite function. Call dlRead to receive the command confirmation response (the dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand field is set by the DLI).

5.4.1.1 Set Translation Table Command

Use the dlWrite function with the pOptArgs.usProtCommand field set to DLI_PROT_SET_TRANS_TABLE to set translation table 1 or 2. Use the MSB of the pOptArgs.usProtCircuitID field to specify the translation table to be set (1 or 2). Each link can use either of the two tables for character translation. After Freeway startup, the tables contain the default values shown in [Appendix C](#). Use the data area of the buffer pointed to by the pBuf parameter to send the translation table values. The first 256 bytes of data are the conversion values for the ASCII-to-new character set translation. The next 256 bytes are the conversion values for the new character set-to-ASCII translation.

An unsuccessful Set Translation Table command can return one of the following error codes in the dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE	The function request is not available for the requested access mode.
DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_PARMS	The parameter value(s) used for the function call are illegal.

5.4.1.2 Clear Statistics Command

Use the dlWrite function with the pOptArgs.usProtCommand field set to DLI_PROT_CLR_STATISTICS to clear the link statistics report. The link statistics are cleared as soon as this command is received. The statistics are automatically cleared when a Start Link command ([Section 5.4.1.5](#)) is issued.

An unsuccessful Clear Statistics command can return the following error code in the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE</code>	The function request is not available for the requested access mode.
-----------------------------------	--

5.4.1.3 Set ICP Message Buffer Size Command

The ICP message buffer size applies to all links on the ICP. The DLI sets the ICP message buffer size as part of the configuration process during the `dlOpen` command. The default ICP message buffer size of 1024 is used in the following situations:

- If the buffer size is not changed after the very first `dlOpen` is issued, immediately after the BSC 2780/3780 software is downloaded. (The `dlOpen` function uses the value specified in the `msgBlkSize` parameter value, [page 192](#).)
- If you specify an invalid buffer size for the Set ICP Message Buffer Size command

If your application must set the ICP message buffer size itself (see the caution previously mentioned in [Section 5.1.4](#)), it must set the `cfgLink` and enable DLI configuration parameters to “no” and perform the following procedure:

First, download the BSC 2780/3780 software and send a `dlOpen` request for one link on the ICP. Second, send a `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_SET_BUF_SIZE`. Set the `iBufLen` parameter to 2, and set the write buffer to the maximum data size (in bytes) for any single transfer to or from the ICP. The valid range is 256 to 8192 bytes and must be less than or equal to the `maxBufSize` parameter in the TSI configuration file (the default value is 1024).

An unsuccessful Set ICP Message Buffer Size command can return one of the following error codes in the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE</code>	The function request is not available for the requested access mode.
-----------------------------------	--

DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_PARMS	The parameter value(s) used for the function call are illegal.
DLI_ICP_ERR_LINK_ACTIVE	The link is already started.

5.4.1.4 Configure Link Command

The DLI can configure the ICP links by setting parameters in the DLI text configuration file and running the `dlicfg` preprocessor program as described in [Chapter 7](#); however, if your application must perform link configuration, set both the `cfgLink` and enable DLI configuration parameters to “no” for that link and then perform the configuration as follows:

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_CFG_LINK` to set the link configuration options. The buffer pointed to by the `pBuf` parameter contains a string of 16-bit words containing link configuration information. The string consists of a variable number of two-word configuration option/value pairs ending with a zero word. The `iBufLen` field equals the number of bytes in the configuration string including the zero terminator word. [Figure 5–2](#) gives an example of the link configuration string.

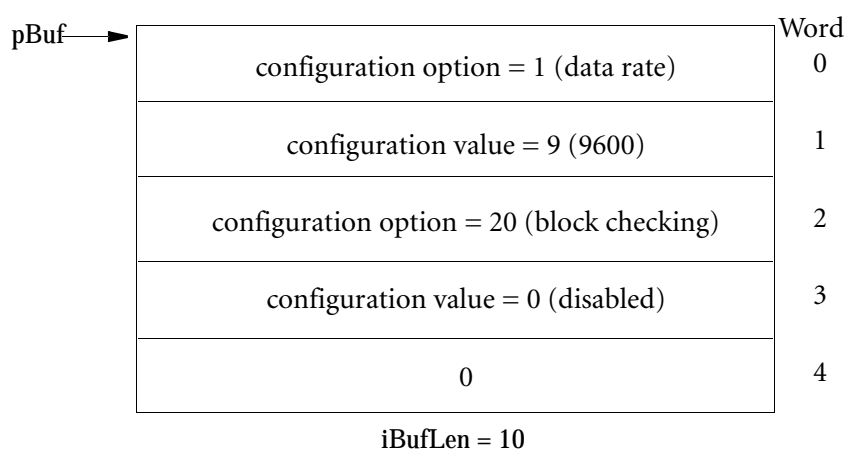


Figure 5–2: Link Configuration Block with Two Options

Each option number corresponds to a software-selectable option of the BSC 2780/3780 software. The configuration value is used to set that option. [Table 6–1 on page 156](#) lists the available options and values for the BSC 2780/3780 protocol.

Note

The Configure Link command can be used at any time during link operation. However, changing some option values while a link is running may result in unusual errors. [Table 6–1 on page 156](#) indicates the options which can be changed while a link is running.

An unsuccessful Configure Link command can return one of the following error codes in the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_LINK_ACTIVE</code>	The link is already started.
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE</code>	The function request is not available for the requested access mode.
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_PARMS</code>	The parameter value(s) used for the function call are illegal.

5.4.1.5 Start Link Command

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_SEND_BIND` and the `pOptArgs.usICPCommand` field set to `DLI_ICP_CMD_BIND` to start a link after issuing a Stop Link command ([Section 5.4.1.6](#)). After receiving this command, the BSC 2780/3780 software turns on the DTR modem control signal and prepares the link to transmit and receive data according to the current configuration settings. After a link starts, data transmission can begin on the line.

For blocking I/O, a successful Start Link command returns zero, but you must call `dlRead` to receive the `DLI_PROT_RESP_BIND_ACK` response indicating that the BSC 2780/3780 software has received a data set ready (DSR) signal (or a DCD signal,

depending on the setting of the modem control option, [Section 6.15 on page 168](#)) from the remote end. The link is not considered started until this signal is received. If you are using non-blocking I/O, you must also make a `dlPoll` request to read the completion status of the command.

An unsuccessful Start Link command can return one of the following error codes in the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_LINK_ACTIVE</code>	The link is already started.
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE</code>	The function request is not available for the requested access mode.
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_PARMS</code>	The parameter value(s) used for the function call are illegal.

5.4.1.6 Stop Link Command

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_SEND_UNBIND` and the `pOptArgs.usICPCommand` field set to `DLI_ICP_CMD_UNBIND` to stop a link without ending your session with Freeway. This command turns off the DTR modem control signal and shuts down the link transmitter and receiver. A Stop Link command can be sent to a link that is active or already inactive.

A call to `dlClose` (described in the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide*) also stops the link, but terminates the session as well. This is the normal method to terminate a session at the end of a client application. The Stop Link command is useful for temporarily stopping the link without terminating the session (for example, to reconfigure the link using the Link Configuration command). The link is restarted again by issuing a Start Link command.

For blocking I/O a successful Stop Link command returns zero, but you must call `dlRead` to receive the `DLI_PROT_RESP_UNBIND_ACK` response indicating the link is deacti-

vated. If you are using non-blocking I/O, you must also make a `dlPoll` request to read the completion status of the command.

An unsuccessful Stop Link command can return one of the following error codes in the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE</code>	The function request is not available for the requested access mode.
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_PARMS</code>	The parameter value(s) used for the function call are illegal.

5.4.1.7 Safe Store Acknowledge Command

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_SAFE_STORE_ACK` to acknowledge a stored message. When the safe store option is enabled, this command must be sent to the BSC software after each end-of-message data block is received by the client (see the data transfer EOM codes listed in [Table 5–4](#)).

Safe store provides the ability to acknowledge a received data message after it has been examined by the client application program or stored on disk. Safe store is often used by financial institutions where a line acknowledge constitutes acceptance of a sale or trade.

Normally, the BSC software automatically acknowledges each received data block. With the safe store option enabled, the BSC software continues to acknowledge received intermediate blocks (ETB); however, when the last block (ETX) is received, the BSC software does not send an automatic acknowledgment on the line. Instead, the BSC software waits for the client to either accept the message by issuing a Safe Store Acknowledge command or reject the message by issuing a Send EOT command ([Section 5.4.1.8](#)).

The Safe Store Acknowledge command causes the BSC software to transmit a positive acknowledgment (ACK0 or ACK1) in response to the last block (ETX) received from

the remote station. This is in contrast to the Send EOT command which causes the BSC software to reject the message by sending an EOT sequence instead of ACK. In this case, the remote station either records the data transmission as unsuccessful or attempts to retransmit the entire message.

If the client sends a Safe Store Acknowledge command while the line is still “active” (i.e., before an EOT sequence is received on the line), the client receives a Safe Store Acknowledge response *back* from BSC signifying that the safe store operation was successful. The TTD/WACK option ([Section 6.24 on page 178](#)) can be used to extend the time the line is active while the client application processes the ETX block.

Note that with the safe store option enabled, the client application program must send an acceptance (safe store acknowledge) or rejection (EOT) after every complete message is received. Otherwise, normal data communication on the line is suspended.

If the last block of a received message contains a parity or block check error, BSC transmits a NAK response as it would with any other block containing an error.

If the safe store option ([Section 6.16 on page 170](#)) is enabled while a link is active, a safe store acknowledge response with the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field set to 0 (success) is generated by the BSC software and sent to the *Manager* session (this is the case even if the *Control* session initiates the Configure Link command). The safe store acknowledge response is the signal to the client application that safe store is now active.

An unsuccessful Safe Store Acknowledge command can return one of the following error codes in the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE</code>	The function request is not available for the requested access mode.
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_MODE_NOT_SAFE</code>	The client issues a Send EOT command when BSC is not expecting one, or an EOT is received from the

remote station (forward abort) before the client sends the message acceptance/rejection.

DLI_ICP_ERR_XMIT_ABORTED	The remote computer (or BSC) sent EOT. The message is discarded.
--------------------------	--

5.4.1.8 Send EOT Command

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_SEND_EOT` to reject a received message when using the safe store option ([Section 6.16 on page 170](#)). The Send EOT is queued behind any preceding outgoing messages. The BSC 2780/3780 software returns a confirmation response with the `dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_SEND_EOT` when the EOT is sent successfully.

An unsuccessful Send EOT command can return one of the following error codes in the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE	The function request is not available for the requested access mode.
DLI_ICP_ERR_MODE_NOT_SAFE	The client issues a Send EOT command when BSC is not expecting one, or an EOT is received from the remote station (forward abort) before the client sends the message acceptance/rejection.

5.4.1.9 BSC 2780/3780 Send Disconnect Command

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_SEND_DISC` to send a BSC 2780/3780 Disconnect command (DLE EOT sequence). The disconnect sequence is queued behind any preceding messages sent by the client. The BSC 2780/3780 software returns a confirmation response with the `dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_SEND_DISC` when the DLE EOT is sent successfully.

If the BSC 2780/3780 software receives a DLE EOT from the line, the client receives a disconnect message with the `dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_SEND_DISC`. If there were any outgoing queued messages, they are returned with the `dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_RESP_LOCAL_ACK`, and the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field set to `DLI_ICP_ERR_XMIT_ABORTED` (transmission aborted by EOT) error code.

The Send Disconnect command is also used during a signon sequence to reject an invalid signon bid or response, as described in the next section.

An unsuccessful Send Disconnect command can return one of the following error codes in the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE</code>	The function request is not available for the requested access mode.
-----------------------------------	--

<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_LINK_INACTIVE</code>	The link is stopped.
--	----------------------

5.4.1.10 BSC 2780/3780 Signon Command

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_SEND_SIGNON` to send a BSC 2780/3780 Signon command. The `pBuf` parameter points to a variable number of 8-bit bytes (up to 20) containing the signon ID.

The signon procedure consists of a bid–response sequence to exchange IDs between the local and remote stations as a prelude to data transfer. Either station can initiate the signon sequence. The BSC 2780/3780 software handles the signon line procedure, but the client application is responsible for verification of remote and local IDs. The signon procedure should be used only on the initial message; all subsequent messages are preceded by a normal line bid (ENQ without ID).

When the BSC 2780/3780 software receives a Signon command from the client, it places the ID sequence before the ENQ character of the first line bid. The other station receives the bid, verifies the ID sequence, and places its own ID sequence before the ACK0 of the

response. The BSC 2780/3780 forwards the response to the client with the `dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field also set to `DLI_PROT_SEND_SIGNON`. The initiating client then verifies the other station's ID and confirms to the BSC 2780/3780 software with another Signon command (with the `iBufLen` parameter set to zero) or a Send EOT command with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_SEND_EOT`. The client rejects an invalid response ID with a Send Disconnect command with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_SEND_DISC`.

After receiving a final confirmation Signon command from the client (valid remote ID), the BSC 2780/3780 software waits up to two seconds before sending EOT on the line. The client must send data within this time period to prevent EOT being sent on the line.

In summary, the following three commands can be used in a signon sequence. Refer to the diagrams in [Section B.1.3 on page 212](#), which illustrate that each `dlWrite Signon` command results in a `dlRead Signon` response (the `dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field is set to `DLI_PROT_SEND_SIGNON` by the DLI).

The Signon command is used to:

- initiate a signon bid
- receive a signon bid
- send a signon response
- receive a signon response
- complete a signon procedure

The Send EOT command is used to:

- complete a signon procedure
- reject a signon bid

The Send Disconnect command is used to:

- reject a signon bid
- reject a signon response

An unsuccessful Signon command can return one of the following error codes in the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE</code>	The function request is not available for the requested access mode.
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_LINK_INACTIVE</code>	The link is stopped.

5.4.1.11 BSC 2780/3780 Poll Line with No Data Command

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_SET_SPECIAL_POLL` to send a BSC 2780/3780 Poll Line with No Data command.

This command is used when the client computer has no data to send but wants to check whether the remote computer is active. This command causes the BSC 2780/3780 software to bid for the line (using ENQ). If the remote computer responds normally (ACK0), the BSC 2780/3780 software sends an immediate EOT to terminate the session and sends a response to the client with the `dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_RESP_LOCAL_ACK`, and the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field set to zero (success).

If the poll was not successful, the `dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_RESP_LOCAL_ACK`, and the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field set to one of the errors shown in [Table 5-5](#).

If a Poll Line command is issued (using *Manager* or *Read* mode) to a link that is busy transmitting or receiving, the BSC 2780/3780 software does not perform the poll line until the message in progress has completed. This ensures that data acknowledgments are returned to the client in the proper sequence.

Table 5–5: BSC 2780/3780 Error Responses on Poll Failure

Local Acknowledge pOptArgs.iICPStatus Field Error Code	Meaning	Reason for Error
DLI_ICP_ERR_XMIT_ABORTED	EOT abort	The remote station sent EOT instead of ACK0 in response to the ENQ poll.
DLI_ICP_ERR_RETRY_EXCEEDED	Retry limit exceeded	The remote station did not respond to the bid within the number of retries specified by the Retry Limit option.
DLI_ICP_ERR_DSR_DOWN	DSR or DCD down	The poll was not issued because the Data Set Ready (DSR) or Data Carrier Detect (DCD) modem signal was low. This error occurs only when the Modem Control option is set to HDX-1 or FDX-1 (for DSR) or HDX-3 or FDX-3 (for DCD).
DLI_ICP_ERR_NO_CLIENT	Line busy	The poll was not issued for one of the following reasons: 1) the link is waiting for a response from the remote station, 2) the link is waiting for a Safe Store Acknowledge command from the client, or 3) the poll was requested using <i>Control</i> mode, and a data message is currently being transmitted or received.
DLI_ICP_ERR_USER_ABORT	User abort	The poll was canceled because a Flush Queue command was issued by the client.

When issuing a Poll Line command, wait until the data acknowledge response is returned from the command before issuing another Poll Line command. If the data acknowledge response from the Poll Line command is never received (usually because it was issued to a line with no clock signals), use the Flush Queue command to cancel the Poll Line and return the data acknowledge response.

If the poll cannot be attempted, the Poll Line with No Data command can return one of the following error codes in the dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE	The function request is not available for the requested access mode.
----------------------	--

DLI_ICP_ERR_LINK_INACTIVE The link is stopped.

5.4.1.12 BSC 2780/3780 Flush Queue Command

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_FLUSH_QUEUE` to send a BSC 2780/3780 Flush Queue command to clear out any data acknowledgments that might remain when a link is stopped and restarted.

If a transmission is in progress, the Flush Queue command causes any outbound queued messages to be returned to the client with the `dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_RESP_LOCAL_ACK`, and the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field set to `DLI_ICP_ERR_DEVICE_BUSY` or `DLI_ICP_ERR_USER_ABORT`. The transmission is aborted by sending an EOT instead of the next appropriate response.

The BSC 2780/3780 software responds to a Flush Queue command with a Flush Queue confirmation with the `dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_FLUSH_QUEUE`. The client should issue a Flush Queue command and then read from the BSC 2780/3780 software until the confirmation is received. This makes sure the BSC 2780/3780 software can begin the next transmission from a known, cleared state.

The Flush Queue command is a transmit-only function; it does not affect incoming messages. This is in contrast to the Stop Link command ([Section 5.4.1.6](#)) that aborts both the receive and transmit functions.

An unsuccessful Flush Queue command can return the following error code in the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE The function request is not available for the requested access mode.

5.4.1.13 BSC 2780/3780 Autodial Start Command

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_START_AUTODIAL` to send a BSC 2780/3780 Autodial Start command. The buffer pointed to by the `pBuf` parameter contains a string of a variable number of 8-bit bytes (up to 256) containing the dial string.

An autodial start acknowledge response with the `dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_START_AUTODIAL` is sent to the client when the BSC 2780/3780 software receives a message from the modem indicating that the connection has been made. The buffer pointed to by the `pBuf` parameter contains the string of responses from the modem. The Autodial Start command supports SADL (Synchronous Autodial Language), Hayes AT-compatible, and V.25bis (byte synchronous) modems. The modem type is selected with the modem type option ([Section 6.29 on page 182](#)).

An unsuccessful Autodial Start command can return one of the error codes listed in [Table 5–6](#) in the `dlRead pOptArgs.iCPSStatus` field of the autodial start acknowledge (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

Table 5–6: Autodial Start Acknowledge Errors Returned

Error Code in the <code>dlRead</code> <code>pOptArgs.iICPStatus</code> Field	Description (Modem Response ¹)
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_NO_ERR</code>	Successful connection (for example, L, CTS detected, or CONNECT)
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_LINK_ACTIVE</code>	The link is already started.
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_XMIT_TIMEOUT</code>	Timeout waiting for modem response or line signals
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_DSR_DOWN</code>	No carrier (for example, E, CFI AB, or No Carrier)
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_NO_CLIENT</code>	Modem set to BUSY-OUT
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_DEVICE_BUSY</code>	Line busy (for example, B, CFI ET, or BUSY)
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BUSY_OUT</code>	Busy-out not supported for modem type
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_NO_ANSWER</code>	No answer (for example, F, CFI NT, or NO ANSWER)
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_INVALID_RESP</code>	Unidentified modem response
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_NO_DIALTONE</code>	No dial tone (for example, E, CFI DT, or NO DIAL-TONE)
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODEM_RESP</code>	Invalid command or configuration (for example, C, CFI FC, or ERROR)
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_INCOMING_CALL</code>	Incoming call detected INC (V.25bis only)

¹ Examples in parentheses are the SADL, V.25bis, and AT responses, respectively.

SADL Support

If the modem type option is set to *SADL*, the Autodial Start command causes the BSC 2780/3780 software to insert the character 'D' at the start of the autodial string. The BSC 2780/3780 software then initiates communications with the SADL modem. The SADL modem type supports synchronous autodial modems (such as Racal-Milgo and Black Box). The BSC 2780/3780 software recognizes the following responses from the SADL modem type:

- L Online
- A Online
- B Busy (`DLI_ICP_ERR_DEVICE_BUSY`)

- F No answer tone (DLI_ICP_ERR_NO_ANSWER)
- E No dial tone (DLI_ICP_ERR_NO_DIALTONE)
- C Invalid command or configuration (DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODEM_RESP)

V.25bis Support

If the modem type option is set to *V.25bis*, the Autodial Start command causes the BSC 2780/3780 software to insert the character string “CRN” at the start of the autodial string. The BSC 2780/3780 software then sends the autodial string to the modem and waits up to 60 seconds for CTS to be detected. The BSC 2780/3780 software recognizes the following responses from the V.25bis modem type:

INC	Incoming call (DLI_ICP_ERR_INCOMING_CALL)
CFI FC	Forbidden number (DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODEM_RESP)
CFI ET	Engaged tone (DLI_ICP_ERR_DEVICE_BUSY)
CFI DT	No dial tone (DLI_ICP_ERR_NO_DIALTONE)
CFI NS	Number not stored (DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODEM_RESP)
CFI AB	Abort Call no carrier (DLI_ICP_ERR_DSR_DOWN)
CFI NT	No answer tone (DLI_ICP_ERR_NO_ANSWER)
CFI RT	Ring tone or modem does not answer (DLI_ICP_ERR_NO_ANSWER)
CFI CB	Local DCE busy (DLI_ICP_ERR_DEVICE_BUSY)
INV	Invalid command or configuration (DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODEM_RESP)
CFI	Generic call failure (DLI_ICP_ERR_INVALID_RESP)

AT Support

If the modem type option is set to *AT*, the Autodial Start command causes the BSC 2780/3780 software to insert the character string “ATE1VD” at the start of the autodial string. The BSC 2780/3780 software then sends the autodial string to the modem and waits up to 60 seconds for a response from the modem that signals success or failure of the call. The BSC 2780/3780 software recognizes the following responses from the AT modem type:

CONNECT	On line
NO CARRIER	No carrier detected (DLI_ICP_ERR_DSR_DOWN)
BUSY	Line Busy (DLI_ICP_ERR_DEVICE_BUSY)
NO ANSWER	No answer (DLI_ICP_ERR_NO_ANSWER)
NO DIALTONE	No dial tone detected (DLI_ICP_ERR_NO_DIALTONE)
ERROR	Invalid command or configuration (DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODEM_RESP)

5.4.1.14 BSC 2780/3780 Modem Configuration Command

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_MODEM_CFG` to send a BSC 2780/3780 Modem Configuration command. The `iBufLen` parameter can be up to 256 bytes. The data content for each modem type is defined later in this section.

The BSC 2780/3780 software sends the modem configuration confirmation response with the `dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_MODEM_CFG` to the client. The buffer pointed to by the `pBuf` parameter contains the string of responses from the modem. The significant difference from the Autodial Start command is that DTR is raised only long enough to send the modem configuration string and to get any response from the modem. The manner in which the Modem Configuration command is sent depends on the setting of the modem type option ([Section 6.29 on page 182](#)). The Modem Configuration command supports SADL (synchronous autodial language), V.25bis (byte synchronous), and Hayes AT-compatible modems.

An unsuccessful Modem Configuration command can return one of the following error codes in the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE</code>	The function request is not available for the requested access mode.
<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_LINK_ACTIVE</code>	The link is already started.

SADL Modem Configuration

If the modem type option is set to *SADL*, the BSC 2780/3780 software sends the configuration string pointed to by the `dlWrite pBuf` parameter to the SADL modem. For example, the configuration string might be '01111,' with the `iBufLen` parameter set to 5. To busy-out a SADL modem, you must send a configuration string that enables the busy-out option (refer to your particular SADL modem user's guide for the specific busy-out string). The busy-out command results in the link remaining disabled with DTR low. The "BUSY" string is not a valid configuration string for a SADL modem; if this string is sent, the BSC 2780/3780 software returns a modem configuration confirmation with the `dlRead pOptArgs.iCPStatus` field set to `DLI_ICP_ERR_BUSY_OUT`, busy-out not supported.

V.25bis Modem Configuration

If the modem type option is set to *V.25bis*, the BSC 2780/3780 software inserts the proper control characters before and after the configuration string pointed to by the `dlWrite pBuf` parameter, sends the string to the V.25bis modem, and waits up to 20 seconds for a response. The BSC 2780/3780 software recognizes the error strings "INV" and "INC" from the V.25bis modem. The "BUSY" string is not a valid configuration string for a V.25bis modem; if this string is sent, the BSC 2780/3780 software returns a modem configuration confirmation with the `dlRead pOptArgs.iCPStatus` field set to `DLI_ICP_ERR_BUSY_OUT`, busy-out not supported.

AT Modem Configuration

If the modem type option is set to *AT*, the BSC 2780/3780 software inserts the string "ATE1V" before the configuration string pointed to by the `dlWrite pBuf` parameter, sends the string to the AT modem, and waits up to five seconds for a response. To busy-out an AT modem, the configuration string "BUSY", with the `iBufLen` parameter set to 4, causes the BSC 2780/3780 software to send "ATE1V*B1" to the modem. The busy-out command results in the link remaining disabled with DTR low.

5.4.1.15 BSC 2780/3780 Trace using dlWrite

The following trace commands allow a client application program to monitor line activity. Refer to the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide* for possible dlWrite error returns.

Start Trace

Use the dlWrite function with the pOptArgs.usProtCommand field set to DLI_PROT_START_LINK_TRACE to send a BSC 2780/3780 Start Trace command. After starting the trace, the BSC 2780/3780 software responds with a start trace confirmation with the dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand field set to DLI_PROT_START_LINK_TRACE. If you issue a Start Trace command to a link that already has trace enabled, you will receive another start trace confirmation.

Stop Trace

Use the dlWrite function with the pOptArgs.usProtCommand field set to DLI_PROT_STOP_LINK_TRACE to send a BSC 2780/3780 Stop Trace command. This command terminates link trace. After stopping the trace, the BSC 2780/3780 software responds with a stop trace confirmation with the dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand field set to DLI_PROT_STOP_LINK_TRACE.

Link Trace Data

After trace is enabled, the BSC 2780/3780 software sends the link trace data to the client with the dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand field set to DLI_PROT_LINK_TRACE_DATA. Link trace data is reported to the client each time a data transmission or reception event occurs, in the order of its occurrence. The BSC software queues trace data messages up to the queue limit ([Section 6.19 on page 175](#)) before sending the DLI_ICP_ERR_QFULL error to the client.

Link trace data always includes time, line mode, and event. If the event was a data block, the trace also includes the length of the data, followed by the actual data (the data length

is limited to the size of the ICP message buffer minus the first 8 bytes of statistics). Refer to [Figure 5–3](#) for the format of the link trace data.

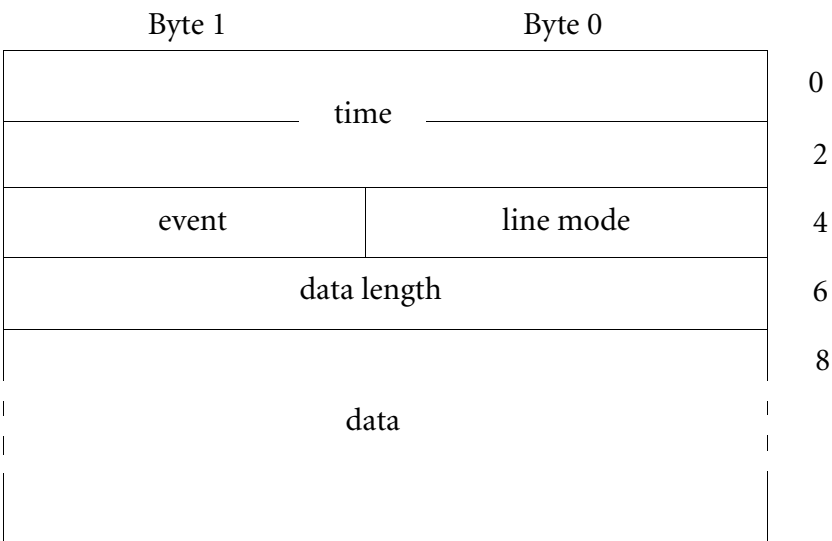


Figure 5–3: BSC 2780/3780 Link Trace Data Format

The time is reported in relative time in tenths of seconds. The clock starts at zero when the Start Trace command is received. The time is a longword (4 bytes).

The line mode identifies whether the link is transmitting (0) or receiving (1).

The event reports the type of BSC control character sequence that was transmitted or received. [Table 5–7](#) lists the control sequences and the reported event number.

Table 5–7: Trace Event Numbers

Event	BSC Control Sequence
1	DSR/DCD change
2	ENQ
3	ETB text block
4	ETX text block
5	ACK0
6	ACK1
7	ACK
8	NAK
9	TTD
10	WACK
11	RVI
12	EOT
13	DLE EOT
14	Signon ENQ sequence
15	Signon ACK0 sequence
16	Autodial
17	Modem configuration
18	Modem timer
19	CTS detected

If a block of data is associated with the BSC control sequence, data length indicates the number of characters transmitted or received, including start character (STX), end character (ETB/ETX/ACK0/ENQ), and BCC. The data length is limited to the size of the ICP message buffer minus the first 8 bytes of statistics. The received or transmitted data is reported in ASCII. The following BSC control sequences include data:

- ETB text block
- ETX text block
- Signon ENQ sequence
- Signon ACK0 sequence
- Autodial
- Modem configuration

5.4.2 Information Requests using Raw dlWrite

[Section 5.4.2.1](#) through [Section 5.4.2.6](#) explain how to issue specific information requests to the BSC 2780/3780 software using the dlWrite function. You must then make a *Raw* dlRead request to receive the report information (the dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand field is set by the DLI to reflect the type of report, and the iBufLen parameter indicates the size of the message).

Caution

The dlWrite iBufLen parameter must specify a buffer size large enough for the requested report; otherwise, the dlRead function truncates the text to the size indicated by the dlWrite iBufLen parameter

5.4.2.1 Request Buffer Report

Use the dlWrite function with the pOptArgs.usProtCommand field set to DLI_PROT_GET_BUF_REPORT to request a buffer report. The dlRead buffer report response (the pOptArgs.usProtCommand field is set to DLI_PROT_GET_BUF_REPORT by the DLI) consists of 20 words (40 bytes) of buffer information as described in [Table 5–8](#).

Table 5–8: Buffer Report Definition

Word	Parameter
1	ICP message buffer size
2	Number of free ICP message buffers
3	Total number of ICP message buffers
4	Transmission buffer size
5	Number of free transmission buffers
6	Total number of transmission buffers
7	Total number of links
8–20	Reserved for Protogate diagnostics

5.4.2.2 Request Configuration Report

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_GET_LINK_CFG` to request the current configuration option settings for a link. The `dlRead` configuration report response (the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field is set to `DLI_PROT_GET_LINK_CFG` by the DLI) consists of a sequence of 16-bit word pairs containing the option number in the first word and the option setting in the second. The report format is identical to that used by the `dlWrite` Configure Link command ([Figure 5–2 on page 120](#)).

5.4.2.3 Request Statistics Report

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_GET_STATISTICS_REPORT` to request link statistics. The BSC 2780/3780 software maintains a set of link statistics. The report consists of 12 words (24 bytes) of statistics.

The format of the `dlRead` statistics report response (the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field is set to `DLI_PROT_GET_STATISTICS_REPORT` by the DLI) is shown in [Table 5–9](#).

Table 5–9: BSC 2780/3780 Statistics Report Definition

Word	Statistic
1	Block check errors
2	Parity errors
3	Receive overrun errors
4	Buffer errors
5	Messages sent
6	Messages received
7	NAKs sent
8	NAKs received
9	Buffer errors (on send)
10	Reserved
11	Transmission blocks sent
12	Transmission blocks received

5.4.2.4 Request Status Report

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_GET_STATUS_REPORT` to request the current link status. The status report returned by `dlRead` is a snapshot of the link's hardware and software condition. The `dlRead` status report response (the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field is set to `DLI_PROT_GET_STATUS_REPORT` by the DLI) is a twelve-word report containing the current link status as shown in [Table 5–10](#).

Link status indicates whether the link is *on*, *off*, or *starting*. *Starting* indicates that a connection command was received, but the link did not start because it did not receive the data set ready (DSR) or data carrier detect (DCD) signal (depending on the modem control option, [Section 6.15 on page 168](#)) from the local modem because the remote station is not active. A line is *off* until it is started and the signal has been received from the remote station.

The current operation mode settings shown below indicate the current state of the line. The current operation mode has meaning only after the line is enabled.

<i>idle</i>	no data transfer activity on the line
<i>DSR off</i>	awaiting the DSR signal. This mode is encountered only when using the HDX-1 or FDX-1 modem control options.
<i>transmit</i>	transferring data to a remote station
<i>receive</i>	receiving data from a remote station
<i>safe</i>	awaiting a Safe Store Acknowledge command from the client application
<i>unsafe</i>	previously in <i>safe</i> mode, but the remote station aborts the transmission with an EOT.
<i>bidding</i>	bidding for the line but no acknowledgment received
<i>dial transmit</i>	sending the autodial string to the modem

Table 5–10: BSC 2780/3780 Status Report Definition

Word	Description	Value	Setting
1	Link status	0	Off
		1	On
		2	Starting
2	Current operation mode	0	Idle
		1	DSR off
		2	Transmit
		3	Receive
		4	Safe
		5	Unsafe
		6	Bidding
		7	Dial transmit
		8	Dial receive
		9	V.25 autodial
		10	AT autodial
		11	SADL configuration
		12	V.25 configuration
		13	AT configuration
3	DTR	0	Off
		1	On
4	DCD	0	Off
		1	On
5	RTS	0	Off
		1	On
6	CTS	0	Off
		1	On
7	Receiver	0	Off
		1	On
8	Transmitter	0	Off
		1	On
9	Last event	1–18	See Table 5–11
10	Reserved		
11	Reserved		
12	DSR	0	Off
		1	On

<i>dial receive</i>	awaiting the modem's message or messages on the status of the autodial sequence
<i>V.25 autodial</i>	sending a V.25 autodial string or waiting for a response to a V.25 autodial string from the modem
<i>AT autodial</i>	sending an AT autodial string or waiting for a response to an AT autodial string from the modem
<i>SADL configuration</i>	sending a configuration string to a SADL modem
<i>V.25 configuration</i>	sending a configuration string to a V.25 modem
<i>AT configuration</i>	sending a configuration string to an AT modem

The signals DTR, DSR, DCD, RTS, and CTS are reported *on* when the link detects them.

The transmitter or receiver is *on* while the link is actually transmitting or receiving data. The transmitter is also reported as *on* if the link is attempting (unsuccessfully) to transmit data on the line. This situation can occur if the transmit clock signal is not present.

[Table 5–11](#) lists the possible values for the Last Event code.

5.4.2.5 Request Translation Table Report

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_GET_TRANS_TABLE` to request either of the two translation tables. Use the MSB of the `pOptArgs.usProtCircuitID` field to specify the requested translation table to be read (1 or 2).

The `dlRead` translation table report response (the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field is set to `DLI_PROT_GET_TRANS_TABLE` by the DLI) has the same format as the `dlWrite` Set Translation Table command ([Section 5.4.1.1](#)).

An unsuccessful translation table report request can return the following error code in the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

<code>DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_PARMS</code>	The parameter value(s) used for the function call are illegal.
------------------------------------	--

Table 5–11: Last Event Codes for Link Status Report

Code	Meaning
1	Timer expired
2	DSR/DCD change
3	V.25 modem circuit 106 (CTS)
4	Transmit buffer overflow
5	No available transmit buffer
6	ENQ received
7	Text block received
8	ACK0 received
9	ACK1 received
10	ACK received
11	NAK received
12	TTD received
13	WACK received
14	RVI received
15	EOT received
16	DLE EOT received
17	Signon ACK received
18	Signon ENQ received

5.4.2.6 Request Software Version ID

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_GET_SOFTWARE_VER` to request the software version ID. The `dlRead` software version report response (the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field is set to `DLI_PROT_GET_SOFTWARE_VER` by the DLI) is a one-line report such as the following:

```
@(#) Protogate BSC for Freeway 2000 – V03.0k 02-May-01 OS/Impact Version V1.7
```

5.4.3 Data Transfer using Raw `dlWrite`

The BSC 2780/3780 software provides two write types (EOM and non-EOM) for each data transfer to allow the user to send or receive a single message that is larger than the configured ICP message buffer size. Each type of data block consists of n bytes of data, where n is a number from 0 to the maximum data size specified by the Set ICP Message Buffer Size command ([Section 5.4.1.3](#)).

If BSC 2780/3780 is currently receiving data from the line when the client computer sends a data block, the data block waits in memory until the current operation is complete before attempting to transmit.

If the `localAck` DLI configuration parameter is set to “no” (see the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide*), the client application must make a `dlRead` request to receive the data acknowledge response for each `dlWrite` data transfer request (the `dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field is set to `DLI_PROT_RESP_LOCAL_ACK` by the DLI). One `DLI_PROT_RESP_LOCAL_ACK` response (with the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field set to 1, signifying that one block of data was sent) is sent to the client computer after each data block has been successfully transmitted to the remote computer, and can be treated by the client program as the remote acknowledgment. Data acknowledgments are also used to report transmission errors (as a response to a `dlRead` request as described in [Section 5.5.2](#)). The client application can use the data acknowledge response to monitor the success or failure of transmitted data messages, or for regulating the number of out-bound messages that the BSC software has pending transmission at any one time.

If the DLI localAck configuration parameter is set to “yes” (which is the default), the data acknowledge response is implied by a successful dlWrite.

An unsuccessful dlWrite data transfer request can return one of the following error codes in the dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus field (see [Appendix D](#) for error handling):

DLI_ICP_ERR_LINK_INACTIVE	The link is stopped.
DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE	The function request is not available for the requested access mode.
DLI_ICP_ERR_XMIT_TIMEOUT	The protocol software was unable to transmit the data. This error occurs when some or all of the modem signals are not present.

5.4.3.1 Send Normal Data

If your application needs to perform a *Raw* dlWrite, use the dlWrite function with the pOptArgs.usProtCommand field set to DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA or DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA_EOM to send normal data. Refer back to [Section 2.3 on page 38](#) for examples of normal data.

As an example, assuming the ICP message buffer size is 2048 bytes, to send a 4096-byte normal data block would require two writes, setting the pOptArgs.usProtCommand field to DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA and DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA_EOM, respectively. A 2048-byte message (or less) would require one write transfer setting the pOptArgs.usProtCommand field to DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA_EOM.

To automatically send normal data with EOM, set writeType = “normal” in the DLI configuration file ([Table 7–2 on page 191](#)).

5.4.3.2 Send Transparent Data

If your application needs to perform a *Raw* dlWrite, use the dlWrite function with the pOptArgs.usProtCommand field set to DLI_PROT_SEND_TRANS_DATA or

DLI_PROT_SEND_TRANS_DATA_EOM to send transparent data. The client can send transparent data in either ASCII or EBCDIC mode. In either mode, the data is not code-converted. The blocks are preceded by DLE STX and terminated with either DLE ETB or DLE ETX. The DLE characters are not counted in the block size. The BSC 2780/3780 software performs all the required DLE insertion and deletion for transparent data streams. Refer back to [Section 2.3 on page 38](#) for examples of transparent data.

To automatically send transparent data with EOM, set `writeType = "transparent"` in the DLI configuration file ([Table 7–2 on page 191](#)).

5.4.3.3 Transparent 2780 Record Data

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_SEND_2780_DATA` or `DLI_PROT_SEND_2780_DATA_EOM` to send transparent 2780 record data. The client can send transparent 2780 record data in either the ASCII or EBCDIC character set mode. The data is not code-converted in either mode. Each record must be preceded by a two-byte count equal to the number of bytes (characters) in that record. A union declaration in C such as the following can be helpful for inserting the two separate count bytes into a byte-oriented character buffer:

```
union {  
    short word;  
    char byte [2];  
} count;
```

The client sends data buffers with the format shown in [Figure 5–4](#):

count 1	record 1	count 2	record 2	...	count <i>n</i>	record <i>n</i>
---------	----------	---------	----------	-----	----------------	-----------------

Figure 5–4: Client Transparent 2780 Record Format

The BSC 2780/3780 software transmits the data in the modified format of [Figure 5–5](#):

SYN	SYN	DLE	STX	record 1		DLE	US	CRC	SYN	SYN	DLE	STX	record 2	
		DLE	US	CRC	...	SYN	SYN	DLE	STX	record <i>n</i>		DLE	ETB	CRC

Figure 5–5: BSC 2780/3780 Modified Transparent 2780 Record Format

The DLE characters are not counted in the transmission block size. The BSC 2780/3780 software performs all the required SYN, DLE, STX, ETB, ETX, US, and CRC insertion and deletion for transparent 2780 data streams.

5.4.3.4 Priority Data

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_SEND_PRIOR_DATA` or `DLI_PROT_SEND_PRIOR_DATA_EOM` to send priority data. When the client computer sends non-transparent priority data to the BSC 2780/3780 software, the software transmits the data immediately if the link is idle. If the link is currently receiving data, the BSC 2780/3780 software sends a reverse interrupt (RVI) to request a line turnaround in order to transmit the priority message. After the remote station turns the line around, the BSC 2780/3780 software sends the priority message. Non-transparent priority data blocks received from the line are reported to the client as normal data (the `dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field is set to `DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA` or `DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA_EOM`).

5.4.3.5 Header Data

Use the `dlWrite` function with the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_SEND_HDR_DATA` or `DLI_PROT_SEND_HDR_DATA_EOM` to send header data. The client uses the header data commands for transmitting non-transparent data that starts with the SOH character on the line. Non-transparent header data blocks received from the line are also reported by the BSC 2780/3780 software to the client as normal data (the `dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field is set to `DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA` or `DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA_EOM`).

5.5 Overview of BSC 2780/3780 Responses using Raw dlRead

[Table 5–12](#) shows the valid BSC 2780/3780 codes sent to your application in response to a *Raw* dlRead request; the returned dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand field indicates the response code. If the dlRead return value is zero or positive, it indicates the number of bytes read; if it is less than zero, an error has occurred. BSC error codes that can be associated with the responses are returned in the pOptArgs.iICPStatus field and are described in [Appendix D](#).

Note

The use of *Normal* dlRead requests (that is, without the optional arguments parameter) is not recommended for BSC 2780/3780 since error reports would be indistinguishable from data received from the remote application.

The following types of data can be returned from the ICP:

- Received data
- Error and confirmation responses
- Acknowledgments (if the localAck DLI configuration parameter is set to “no”)
- Reports in response to dlWrite information requests

Table 5–12: BSC 2780/3780 Response Codes

Category	DLI Response Code in pOptArgs.usProtCommand Field	Usage	Reference Section
Received Data	DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA	Normal received data	Section 5.5.1
	DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA_EOM	Normal received data (end of message)	Section 5.5.1
	DLI_PROT_SEND_TRANS_DATA	Transparent received data	Section 5.5.1
	DLI_PROT_SEND_TRANS_DATA_EOM	Transparent received data (end of message)	Section 5.5.1
	DLI_PROT_SEND_2780_DATA	Transparent 2780 record data	Section 5.5.1
	DLI_PROT_SEND_2780_DATA_EOM	Transparent 2780 record data (end of message)	Section 5.5.1
	DLI_PROT_LINK_TRACE_DATA	Link trace data	Section 5.4.1.15
Errors ¹	DLI_PROT_RESP_ERROR	Error report; the dlRead pOptArgs. iICPStatus field contains more infor- mation.	Appendix D
Acknowledgments	DLI_PROT_RESP_BIND_ACK	Acknowledgment of Start Link com- mand	Section 5.4.1.5
	DLI_PROT_RESP_UNBIND_ACK	Acknowledgment of Stop Link com- mand	Section 5.4.1.6
	DLI_PROT_RESP_LOCAL_ACK	Acknowledgment that a transmission buffer has been sent (if the dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus field = 1). If it is less than zero, an error has occurred.	Section 5.4.3
	DLI_PROT_SAFE_STORE_ACK	Safe store acknowledge: 1) the last data block has been successfully acknowl- edged by the remote computer, or 2) the safe store option was switched from <i>disable</i> to <i>enable</i> while the link was active.	Section 5.4.1.7
	DLI_PROT_START_AUTODIAL	Acknowledge response to an Autodial Start command. If any failure occurs, the link is disabled, and the dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus field contains one of the error codes in Table 5–6 .	Section 5.4.1.13

^aAll of the responses, as well as the DLI_PROT_RESP_ERROR error report, can return an error code in the dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus field.

Table 5–12: BSC 2780/3780 Response Codes (*Cont'd*)

Category	DLI Response Code in pOptArgs.usProtCommand Field	Usage	Reference Section
Command Confirmations	DLI_PROT_SET_TRANS_TABLE	Set Translation Table confirmation.	Section 5.4.1.1
	DLI_PROT_CLR_STATISTICS	Clear Statistics confirmation.	Section 5.4.1.2
	DLI_PROT_SET_BUF_SIZE	Set ICP Message Buffer Size confirmation.	Section 5.4.1.3
	DLI_PROT_CFG_LINK	Configure Link confirmation.	Section 5.4.1.4
	DLI_PROT_SEND_EOT	Send EOT confirmation	Section 5.4.1.8
	DLI_PROT_SEND_DISC	(1) Send DLE EOT confirmation, or (2) the BSC software received a DLE EOT from the line. Any queued outgoing messages are returned with the dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus field set to DLI_ICP_ERR_XMIT_ABORTED.	Section 5.4.1.9
	DLI_PROT_SEND_SIGNON	Send Signon confirmation	Section 5.4.1.10
	DLI_PROT_SET_SPECIAL_POLL	Poll Line with No Data confirmation	Section 5.4.1.11
	DLI_PROT_FLUSH_QUEUE	Flush Queue confirmation sent to the client after any queued outbound mes- sages have been returned with the dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus field set to DLI_PROT_RESP_LOCAL_ACK and an error in the dlRead pOptArgs .iICPStatus field.	Section 5.4.1.12
	DLI_PROT_MODEM_CFG	Modem Configuration confirmation after the BSC software receives a response from the modem. If any fail- ure occurs, the dlRead pOptArgs .iICPStatus field contains one of the error codes shown in Table 5–6 .	Section 5.4.1.14
	DLI_PROT_START_LINK_TRACE	Start Trace confirmation	Section 5.4.1.15
	DLI_PROT_STOP_LINK_TRACE	Stop Trace confirmation	Section 5.4.1.15
Reports	DLI_PROT_GET_BUF_REPORT	Buffer report	Section 5.4.2.1
	DLI_PROT_GET_LINK_CFG	Link configuration report	Section 5.4.2.2
	DLI_PROT_GET_STATISTICS_REPORT	Statistics report	Section 5.4.2.3
	DLI_PROT_GET_STATUS_REPORT	Link status report	Section 5.4.2.4
	DLI_PROT_GET_TRANS_TABLE	Translation table report	Section 5.4.2.5
	DLI_PROT_GET_SOFTWARE_VER	Software version ID report	Section 5.4.2.6

¹ All of the responses, as well as the error report, can return an error code in the **dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus** field.

5.5.1 Received Data

The BSC 2780/3780 software provides the following dlRead codes for data reception:

- normal data
(DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA and DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA_EOM)
- transparent data
(DLI_PROT_SEND_TRANS_DATA and DLI_PROT_SEND_TRANS_DATA_EOM)
- transparent 2780 record data
(DLI_PROT_SEND_2780_DATA and DLI_PROT_SEND_2780_DATA_EOM)
- link trace data (DLI_PROT_LINK_TRACE_DATA)

Note

Non-transparent priority data or header data received on the line is reported to the client as normal data.

For efficiency, the normal data type sometimes contains multiple messages from the serial lines in a single message buffer. The dlRead function returns a non-zero pOptArgs.iICPStatus field if there is an error associated with the message.

When the BSC 2780/3780 software receives transparent 2780 record data from the line, it is modified and sent to the client in the same COUNT/RECORD format as the client sends to the BSC 2780/3780 software (refer back to [Figure 5–4 on page 148](#)). The dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand field is set to DLI_PROT_SEND_2780_DATA or DLI_PROT_SEND_2780_DATA_EOM by the DLI.

Caution

With larger transparent 2780 records (such that only one record fits into a transmission block), the BSC 2780/3780 software receives the block as:

DLE	STX	record	DLE	ETB	BCC
-----	-----	--------	-----	-----	-----

This is exactly the same format as a 3780 transparent data block, and is therefore sent to the client as transparent data (dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand field set to DLI_PROT_SEND_TRANS_DATA). This problem can possibly be avoided by setting the BSC 2780/3780 software transmission block size large enough to hold more than one transparent 2780 record.

5.5.2 Error, Confirmation, and Acknowledgment Responses

[Table 5–12](#) lists the possible BSC 2780/3780 error, confirmation, and acknowledgment response codes returned in the dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand field. All of the responses, as well as the DLI_PROT_RESP_ERROR error report, can return an error code in the dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus field to indicate failure.

5.5.3 Reports in Response to dlWrite Information Requests

After issuing a dlWrite information request ([Section 5.4.2](#)), you must issue a dlRead request to receive the report information. The reports are listed in [Table 5–12](#).

BSC 2780/3780 Link Configuration Options

Note

This chapter, along with [Chapter 5](#) and [Appendix B](#), should be read by programmers who are interfacing an application program to a BSC 2780/3780 environment. If you are programming BSC 3270, refer to [Chapter 3](#), [Chapter 4](#), and [Appendix A](#).

This chapter describes the various link configuration options that can be set using the DLI configuration file described in [Section 7.2 on page 188](#). Alternatively, the link options can be set using the dlWrite Configure Link command as described in [Section 5.4.1.4 on page 120](#).

[Table 6–1](#) lists all the available options in numerical order along with the allowed settings and defaults. The defaults are in effect immediately after the protocol software is downloaded to the ICP. They remain in effect until you either modify the DLI configuration file and redownload the ICP, or send a dlWrite Configure Link command.

Note

Except where noted in [Table 6–1](#), link configuration options can be set only when the link being configured is stopped.

Some of the possible error conditions are discussed in the following sections, as they relate to using each configuration option. [Appendix D](#) explains BSC error handling and gives a list of errors.

Table 6–1: BSC 2780/3780 Link Configuration Options and Settings

Option	Number	Value	Default (✓)	Setting
Data Rate (bits/second)	1	0		75
		1		110
		2		135
		3		150
		4		300
		5		600
		6		1200
		7		2400
		8		4800
		9	✓	9600
		10		19200
		11		38400
		12		56000
		13		64000
Clock Source	2	0	✓	External
		1		Internal
Reply Timer Length	3	<i>n</i>	3	<i>n</i> = number of seconds (1 to 1800)
Number of Leading Sync Characters	4	<i>n</i>	3	<i>n</i> = sync chars (2 to 8)
Protocol	5	0	✓	2780/3780
Parity	6	0		None
		1	✓	Odd
		2		Even
Character Set	7	0		ASCII/LRC-8
		1	✓	EBCDIC/CRC-16
		2		ASCII/CRC-16
		3		Reserved
		4		EBCDIC/CCITT-0
		5		ASCII/CCITT-0
Transmission Block Size	8	<i>n</i>	512	<i>n</i> = size in bytes (64 to 4096)
Data Translation ^a	10	0		Disable
		1	✓	Table 1
		2		Table 2

^a Option can be changed while the link is active.

Table 6–1: BSC 2780/3780 Link Configuration Options and Settings (*Cont'd*)

Option	Number	Value	Default (✓)	Setting
Station Priority ^a	11	0	✓	Slave
		1		Master
Space Compression ^a	12	0	✓	Disable
		1		Enable
Conversational Mode ^a	13	0	✓	Disable
		1		Enable
Retry Limit	14	<i>n</i>	3	<i>n</i> = number of retries (1 to 127)
Wait for Bid Delay	15	<i>n</i>	10	<i>n</i> = delay after sending EOT in tenths of seconds (1 to 8192)
Modem Control	16	0		HDX-1
		1	✓	FDX-1
		2		HDX-2
		3		FDX-2
		4		HDX-3
		5		FDX-3
		6		HDX-4
		7		FDX-4
Safe Store ^a	17	0	✓	Disable
		1		Enable
Message Blocking ^a	19	0		Disable
		1	✓	Data blocking
Block Checking ^a	20	0		Disable
		1	✓	Exclude first byte
		2		Include first byte
Queue Limit ^a	21	0	✓	No limit
		<i>n</i>		Buffer limit (1 to 4096)
EOM Line Control ^a	22	0	✓	Reverse line
		1		Hold Line
		2		Permanent Hold
		3		Permanent Hold with Notify
Read Session ^a	23	0	✓	Disable
		1		Enable
Alternating Ack ^a	24	0		Disable (ACK)
		1	✓	Enable (ACK0/ACK1)

^a Option can be changed while the link is active.

Table 6–1: BSC 2780/3780 Link Configuration Options and Settings (*Cont'd*)

Option	Number	Value	Default (✓)	Setting
Line Turnaround Delay	25	<i>n</i>	0	<i>n</i> = delay after receiving EOT in tenths of seconds (1 to 8192)
TTD/WACK ^a	26	0		Disable
		1	✓	Normal (transmit both TTDs and WACKs)
		2		Transmit TTDs only (suppress WACKs)
		3		Transmit WACKs only (suppress TTDs)
RVI Handling ^a	28	0	✓	Continue
		1		Abort
DSR/DCD Delay ^a	30	<i>n</i>	3	<i>n</i> = delay in seconds (1 to 127)
TTD/WACK Limit ^a	31	0	✓	No limit
		<i>n</i>		<i>n</i> = number of receives (1 to 8192)
Disconnect Timer Length	32	0	✓	Disable disconnect timer
		<i>n</i>		<i>n</i> = number of seconds (1 to 1800)
Modem Type	35	0		Disable
		1	✓	SADL
		2		V.25bis
		3		AT
Electrical Interface (Freeway 1000 only)	40	0	✓	EIA-232
		1		EIA-485
		2		EIA-530/EIA-449 (balanced, EIA-422)
		3		V.35
		4		EIA-449 (unbalanced, EIA-423)
		5		EIA-562
Line Type	41	0	✓	Leased line (send EOT on error)
		1		Dial-up line (send DLE EOT on error)

^a Option can be changed while the link is active.

6.1 Data Rate Option (1)

The data rate can be set by the client for installations where the communications server must generate the data clocking signal. If external clocking is provided by a modem or modem eliminator, the configuration of the data rate is not required. However, when transmitting data, the BSC software uses the data rate setting to calculate the amount of time to wait before aborting a transmission with the DLI_ICP_ERR_XMIT_TIMEOUT transmit timeout error. Therefore, if BSC is being used to transmit data, the data rate should be set to match, or be slower than, the modem clock rate.

The data rate on a link can be set from 75 through 64,000 bits/second. When using data rates above 19,200 bits/second, be careful not to overload the communications server processor. Freeway supports up to 16 links per ICP. The maximum link data rates are:

- 2 links at 64,000 b/s
- 4 links at 38,000 b/s
- 8 links at 19,200 b/s
- 16 links for a 16-port ICP at 9600 b/s

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `dataRate` parameter; for example, `dataRate = 9600`. See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

6.2 Clock Source Option (2)

The clock source option determines the source of the data clock signals for a link. Data clocking can be provided by the BSC software or received from an external source.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `clockSource` parameter; for example, `clockSource = "external"`. See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

6.2.1 External

Protogate recommends the *external* clock setting for most communications applications that involve a cable length greater than 25 feet. In the external setting, the clock generator is disabled. Data clocking must be supplied by an external source such as a modem or modem eliminator. Receive clocking is input through the receiver timing signal (EIA-232 pin 17), and transmit clocking is input through the transmitter timing signal (EIA-232 pin 15). Your Freeway server is factory configured for *external* clocking using a hardware jumper.

6.2.2 Internal

When the *internal* clock setting is used, the clock signal is generated at the rate specified in the data rate option ([Section 6.1](#)). The generated clock signal is used for transmit clocking and is output on the terminal timing signal (EIA-232 pin 24). Receive clocking is input through the receiver timing signal (EIA-232 pin 17). The transmitter timing signal (EIA-232 pin 15) is not used. Your Freeway server is factory configured for *external* clocking using a hardware jumper. If you need to set *internal* clocking, call the Protogate customer support number given in the *Preface*.

6.3 Reply Timer Length Option (3)

The reply time is the length of time in seconds that the BSC 2780/3780 software waits for the remote station to reply to a transmission. The transmission may be a poll, select, or data block. If the remote station does not respond within the timeout period, the BSC software repeats the transmission up to the number of times allowed by the retry limit option ([Section 6.13](#)) before aborting with the DLI_ICP_ERR_RETRY_EXCEEDED retry limit error. This option also controls the length of time BSC waits in receive mode before sending ENQ to the remote station.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `replyTimerLen` parameter; for example, `replyTimerLen = 3`. See [Table 7-2 on page 191](#).

6.4 Number of Leading SYN Characters Option (4)

This option specifies the number of SYN characters to precede all transmitted data blocks. Certain links may require more SYN characters to ensure synchronization on poor-quality lines. The minimum number of leading SYN characters is two; the maximum number is eight.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `numLeadSync` parameter; for example, `numLeadSync = 3`. See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

6.5 Protocol Option (5)

This option indicates the protocol used on the ICP and has only one setting (“BSC3780”). This setting is reported in the configuration report ([Section 3.4.2.2 on page 72](#)) which can be used by client application programs to verify the protocol running on the ICP.

The DLI configuration program ([Chapter 7](#)) considers this protocol option to be protocol-independent, but it must be set to “BSC3780” in order to select the BSC 2780/3780 protocol. This parameter must be set prior to any attempt to assign another BSC 2780/3780 configuration option within a session definition (see [Figure 7–2 on page 189](#)); otherwise the DLI configuration program will fail.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `protocol` parameter; for example, `protocol = “BSC3780”`. See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

6.6 Parity Option (6)

When using the ASCII/LRC-8 or ASCII/CRC-16 character set, this option controls the setting of bit 7 of each character. Parity can be set to *odd*, *even*, or *none* (space parity). Any transmission containing a parity error is detected by the receiver hardware, and the appropriate error recovery is taken by the BSC software. If no parity is selected, bit 7 is set to zero for all transmitted characters. Parity is automatically disabled when the

EBCDIC/CRC-16 character set is used. The parity used for ASCII transmission is normally odd.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the parity parameter; for example, parity = "odd". See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

6.7 Character Set Option (7)

This option determines the character code for the BSC control sequences used on the transmission line. It also determines what type of block checking is done on data blocks. The BSC software transmits all control characters on the line with space parity when *no parity* ([Section 6.6](#)) is selected.

You can configure the BSC 2780/3780 software to transmit and receive the following data combinations:

1. CRC-16 or CCITT-0 block check:
 - EBCDIC non-transparent
 - EBCDIC transparent
 - ASCII non-transparent, no parity
 - ASCII non-transparent, parity on control characters only
 - ASCII transparent, no parity
 - ASCII transparent, parity on control characters only
2. LRC-8 block check:
 - ASCII non-transparent, no parity
 - ASCII non-transparent, with parity
 - ASCII transparent, no parity
 - ASCII transparent, with parity

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the charSet parameter; for example, charSet = "ebcdicrc16". See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

6.7.1 ASCII/LRC-8

When this setting is used, the BSC control sequences are transmitted in 7-bit ASCII format, and LRC-8 block checking is performed.

6.7.2 EBCDIC/CRC-16

When this setting is used, the BSC control sequences are transmitted in 8-bit EBCDIC, and the CRC-16 block check polynomial is used. The parity option is ignored when using EBCDIC/CRC-16.

6.7.3 ASCII/CRC-16

When this setting is used, the BSC 2780/3780 software performs CRC-16 block checking on all input and output ASCII data blocks. The software transmits and receives character and data parity depending on the setting of the BSC parity option as shown below:

0	<i>none</i>	No data parity, no control character parity
1	<i>odd</i>	No data parity, odd control character parity
2	<i>even</i>	No data parity, even control character parity

6.7.4 EBCDIC/CCITT-0

When this setting is used, the BSC control sequences are transmitted in 8-bit EBCDIC, and the CCITT-0 block check polynomial ($X^{16} + X^{12} + X^5 + 1$) is used. The parity option is ignored when using EBCDIC/CCITT-0.

6.7.5 ASCII/CCITT-0

When this setting is used, the BSC software uses the CCITT-0 block check polynomial ($X^{16} + X^{12} + X^5 + 1$) on all input and output ASCII data blocks. The software transmits and receives character and data parity depending on the setting of the BSC parity option as shown below:

0	<i>none</i>	No data parity, no control character parity
1	<i>odd</i>	No data parity, odd control character parity
2	<i>even</i>	No data parity, even control character parity

6.8 Transmission Block Size Option (8)

The BSC software has transmission buffers fixed at 4,096 bytes. Each link has one transmit buffer and one receive buffer. You can define the maximum amount of the 4,096 bytes that the BSC software can transmit as one block on the communication line by setting the transmission block size from 64 to 4,096 bytes. The BSC software, however, can receive blocks up to 4,096 bytes regardless of the setting of this option. See [Section 2.3.4 on page 40](#) for more information on transmission blocks.

The size of the transmission block includes the bisynchronous text control characters as well as the data characters. For example, a transmission block size of 512 bytes consists of 510 bytes of data plus two control characters (STX and ETX). SYN, DLE, PAD, and BCC characters are not included in the transmission block size count. The BSC software automatically inserts all control characters in the transmission block. If the remote station sends a transmission block that is larger than 4,096 bytes, the BSC software sends a NAK response to the transmission and returns the `DLI_ICP_ERR_BUF_OVERFLOW` buffer overrun error to the client along with all the data which was successfully received.

The size of message buffers from the client is independent of the transmission block size. The ICP message buffer size is controlled by the Set ICP Message Buffer Size command ([Section 5.4.1.3 on page 119](#)). Messages to be transmitted that are greater than the transmission block size are broken into smaller messages and sent separately.

For messages received on the communication line, the ICP message buffer size ([Section 5.4.1.3 on page 119](#)) is the maximum size that can be received; otherwise, the `DLI_ICP_ERR_BUF_OVERFLOW` error code is sent to the client application.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `transBlkSize` parameter; for example, `transBlkSize = 512`. See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

6.9 Data Translation Option (10)

This option invokes transmit and receive data translation using one of the two onboard ASCII/EBCDIC translation tables described in [Appendix C](#), either of which can be changed by issuing a Set Translation Table command ([Section 5.4.1.1 on page 118](#)). This option is enabled only when the character set option ([Section 6.7](#)) is set to EBCDIC.

If this option is set to *disable*, no data translation is performed, but EBCDIC control sequences are used on the line. In this case, the client application program is responsible for performing any necessary data translation.

When one of the translation tables is selected, data translation is enabled. Data blocks from the client are treated as ASCII data and are translated into EBCDIC before they are transmitted on the communication line. Conversely, data blocks received from the line are treated as EBCDIC and are translated to ASCII before they are sent to the client.

The BSC 2780/3780 software translates data from transparent as well as non-transparent data blocks. [Table 6–2](#) illustrates the proper data translation settings for various types of data.

Table 6–2: Recommended Data Translation Settings

Type of Data	Required Data Translation Setting	Reason for Setting
Transparent 2780	Disable	Required because of the transparent 2780 count characters. See Section 5.4.3.3 on page 148 .
Transparent 3780 (non-text)	Disable	Required because some ASCII control characters do not translate to an EBCDIC equivalent.
Transparent 3780	Enable or Disable	Same for either setting.
Non-transparent text	Enable	Required when the character set is EBCDIC CRC16 because some ASCII text characters are equivalent to EBCDIC control characters; for example, ASCII 32 is an EBCDIC SYN character.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `dataTranslation` parameter; for example, `dataTranslation = "table1"`. See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

6.10 Station Priority Option (11)

This option enables the link to operate as a slave or as a master station. The purpose of this option is to resolve any contention when both stations bid for the line at the same time.

If the link is configured as a slave, the BSC 2780/3780 software bids for the line at a rate equal to the length of the reply timer. If the BSC 2780/3780 software receives a simultaneous line bid, it aborts its own bid and accepts the bid from the remote station. If the link is configured as a master, the BSC 2780/3780 software bids at a rate of one second less than the reply timer length ([Section 6.3](#)). If the master station receives another bid simultaneously, it ignores the received bid and the BSC 2780/3780 software continues bidding.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `stationPri` parameter; for example, `stationPri = "slave"`. See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

6.11 Space Compression Option (12)

When the space compression option is selected, the BSC 2780/3780 software performs 3780 space compression or space expansion on all non-transparent data blocks. On transmitted blocks, the software replaces each group of two or more consecutive space characters (up to 63) with an IGS (EBCDIC) or GS (ASCII) character followed by a space-count character that defines the number of spaces removed. For a group of 64 or more consecutive spaces, multiple IGS (GS)/space-count character sequences are used. When the software receives data blocks, it deletes the IGS and GS characters and uses the space-count character to replace the proper number of space characters.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `spaceComp` parameter; for example, `spaceComp = "no"`. See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

6.12 Conversational Mode Option (13)

Conversational mode allows a remote station to respond to an ETX block with a data block, instead of responding with an ACK and waiting for line turnaround. If this option is set to *enable*, conversational data responses are sent (when possible) on the line. If this option is set to *disable*, conversational responses are not sent; however, the BSC software always accepts conversational data responses received on the communication line, regardless of the setting of this option.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `convMode` parameter; for example, `convMode = "no"`. See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

6.13 Retry Limit Option (14)

This option sets the number of times the BSC software repeats a transmission when the correct response is not received from the remote station. If the correct response is not received within the specified number of retries, BSC resets the data link to the idle state (sends EOT) and returns all pending write messages to the client using the `DLI_PROT_RESP_LOCAL_ACK` data acknowledgment response with the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field set to the `DLI_ICP_ERR_RETRY_EXCEEDED` error.

The retry limit applies to the following BSC transmissions:

- Initial line bid (ENQ)
- Data block transmission (STX—ETB/ETX)
- Request for response (ENQ) if there is no response

In some situations the remote computer may send a WACK (wait acknowledge) sequence instead of the expected response (ACK0 or ACK1) to a transmitted data block. BSC transmits an ENQ in response to the received WACK. The WACK–ENQ sequences are not counted by BSC. Thus it is possible for the remote computer to prevent the `DLI_ICP_ERR_RETRY_EXCEEDED` error by sending WACK until it is ready to send the correct response.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `retryLimit` parameter; for example, `retryLimit = 3`. See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

6.14 Wait for Bid Delay Option (15)

This option controls the delay that occurs after BSC sends a message on a link which is followed by a normal line turnaround (EOT). The delay is intended to give the remote computer a chance to bid for the line if it has something to send, especially if the BSC software has several messages queued to send. Delay time is specified in tenths of seconds and can range from zero (no delay) to 8192 (819.2 seconds).

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `waitBidDelay` parameter; for example, `waitBidDelay = 10`. See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

Note

There is one “forced” wait-for-bid delay in the BSC 3780 protocol. The situation occurs when BSC sends data and the remote computer responds with RVI (forced turnaround). In this case, BSC uses the value in option 15 as a delay, unless it is 0 in which case there is a forced delay of 0.5 seconds to give the remote computer a chance to bid.

6.15 Modem Control Option (16)

This option determines the operation of the request to send (RTS), data set ready (DSR), and data carrier detect (DCD) modem signals. [Table 6–3](#) lists the possible settings for this option.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `modemControl` parameter; for example, `modemControl = “FDX1”`. See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

Table 6–3: Modem Control Option Settings

Value	Setting	Description
0	HDX-1	Half duplex, monitor DSR
1	FDX-1	Full duplex, monitor DSR
2	HDX-2	Half duplex, ignore DSR and DCD
3	FDX-2	Full duplex, ignore DSR and DCD
4	HDX-3	Half duplex, monitor DCD
5	FDX-3	Full duplex, monitor DCD
6	HDX-4	Half duplex, monitor DSR and DCD
7	FDX-4	Full duplex, monitor DSR and DCD

6.15.1 RTS Signal

When the modem control option is set to half-duplex operation (HDX-1, HDX-2, or HDX-3), the RTS signal is turned on when BSC is ready to transmit and turned off when transmission is complete. In full-duplex operation (FDX-1, FDX-2, or FDX-3), the RTS signal is turned on when the link is started and stays on until the link is stopped. In all cases, transmission does not start until a clear to send (CTS) signal is received by the BSC software.

6.15.2 DSR Signal

The modem control option allows a link to monitor the data set ready (DSR) signal. With the HDX-1 or FDX-1 setting, line activity ceases when the signal on the DSR pin is lost. With either the HDX-2 or FDX-2 setting, the incoming DSR and DCD signals are ignored by the BSC software. The HDX-2 and FDX-2 settings are useful for half-duplex modems that toggle the DSR signal during normal link operation, or when DSR may not be present. With either the HDX-4 or FDX-4 setting, line activity ceases when the signal on either the DSR or DCD pin is lost. In all cases, CTS is used for permission to send data.

6.15.3 DCD Signal

The modem control option allows a link to use the data carrier detect (DCD) signal as DSR. With either the HDX-3 or FDX-3 setting, line activity ceases when the signal on the DCD pin is lost. With either the HDX-2 or FDX-2 setting, incoming DCD signals are ignored by the BSC software. With either the HDX-4 or FDX-4 setting, line activity ceases when the signal on either the DSR or DCD pin is lost.

6.16 Safe Store Option (17)

The safe store option enables or disables the safe store capability of the BSC software. See [Section 5.4.1.7 on page 123](#) for more information about safe store.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `safeStore` parameter; for example, `safeStore = "no"`. See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

6.17 Message Blocking Option (19)

This option controls the logical blocking and deblocking of data between message buffers and transmission blocks during normal link operation. Normally, the ICP message buffer size ([Section 5.4.1.3 on page 119](#)) is configured to be much larger than the transmission block size ([Section 6.8](#)), but this does not have to be true in order for message blocking to work. See [Section 2.3.4 on page 40](#) for more information on message buffers and transmission blocks.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `messageBlocking` parameter; for example, `messageBlocking = "dataBlk"`. See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

[Figure 6–1](#) through [Figure 6–4](#) show message blocking set to *disable* compared to message blocking set to *data blocking*. The figures use an ICP message buffer size of 1024, a transmit buffer size of 512, and a receive buffer size of 4096.

Note

When transparent data is received, blocking acts as if message blocking is set to *disable*.

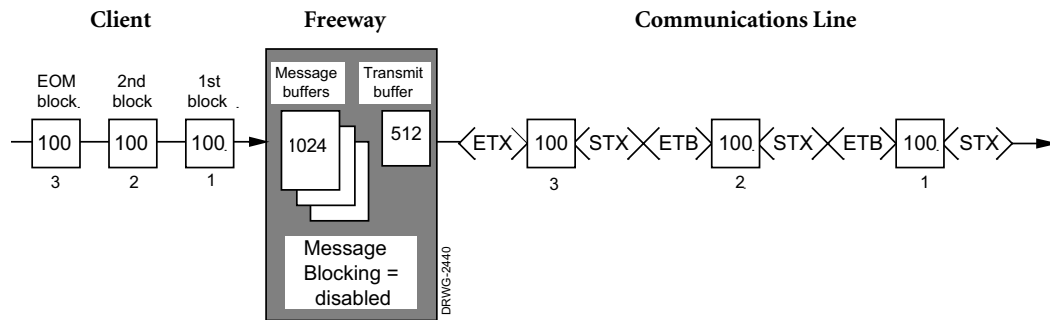


Figure 6–1: Transmit with *Disabled* Message Blocking Option

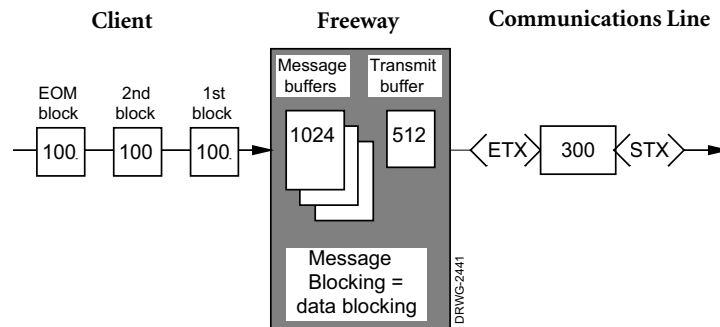


Figure 6–2: Transmit with *Data Blocking* Option

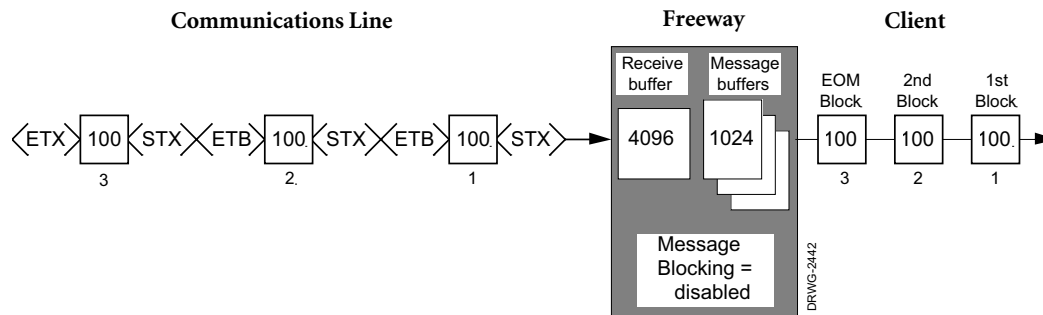


Figure 6–3: Receive with *Disabled* Message Blocking Option

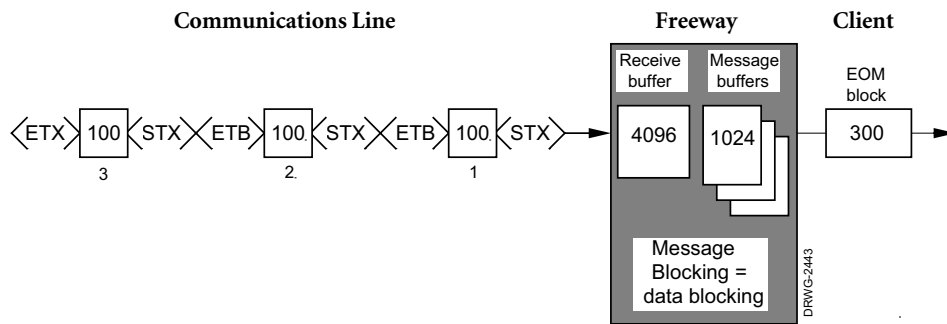


Figure 6–4: Receive with *Data Blocking* Option

6.17.1 Blocking Disabled

If the message blocking option is set to *disable*, blocking/deblocking is not performed. For inbound data, each received transmission block is treated as a separate message buffer to the client. For outbound data, each message buffer is transmitted on the line as a separate transmission block. If the ICP message buffer size is larger than the maximum transmission block size, BSC performs message deblocking until the entire message buffer is transmitted. BSC never concatenates outbound messages that are smaller than the transmission block size.

To avoid splitting outbound data when message blocking is set to *disable*, the transmission block size ([Section 6.8](#)) should be set larger than the client data block size.

6.17.2 Data Blocking

If the message blocking option is set to *data blocking*, BSC performs logical blocking of inbound data and logical deblocking of outbound data without regard to any embedded data records. For example, assume the ICP message buffer size is 4096 bytes and the transmission block size is 512 bytes. If the client sends a 1024-byte message, BSC sends that message in three separate transmission blocks (512, 512, and 6). Note that the third 6-byte block is necessary since the transmission block count includes the control characters STX and ETX.

Caution

When you set message blocking to *data blocking*, the BSC software can concatenate non-EOM message buffers from the client into the transmission buffer if all the following are true:

1. The transmit buffer is not full.
2. The BSC software has another message buffer queued for transmission.
3. The client is sending the data in non-transparent mode.

Concatenation depends on the timing of the message buffers the client queues. It does not always occur.

6.17.3 BSC 2780/3780 Record Handling

When message blocking is set to *data blocking*, the BSC 2780/3780 software performs 2780 and 3780 record handling if appropriate. The software scans the first block of all messages for 3780 record separator (RS) or 2780 unit separator (US) characters. The BSC 2780/3780 software performs 2780 or 3780 message blocking depending on which type of character it encounters first. If it does not find a RS or US character in the first data block, it blocks or deblocks the entire message regardless of embedded data records. If the BSC 2780/3780 software receives a block of records ending in ETB, and the last record of the block does not end with a record separator, the BSC 2780/3780 software inserts an RS or US character at the end of the block to separate the last record of that block from the first record of the next block; otherwise, the BSC 2780/3780 software never inserts RS or US characters into the text block.

If the BSC 2780/3780 software encounters a 2780 US character in the first block of a non-transparent message, it then blocks and deblocks the message such that the 2780 records are not split across a transmission block or ICP message buffer boundaries. Outgoing message records from the BSC 2780/3780 software have a BCC appended after each US, whereas records incoming to the client have the BCCs stripped away. Refer to [Section 5.4.3.3 on page 148](#) for details on the format of transparent 2780 blocks.

If the BSC 2780/3780 software encounters a 3780 RS character in the first block of a non-transparent message, it then blocks and deblocks the message such that the 3780 records are not split across transmission block or ICP message buffer boundaries. As mentioned above, the software handles transparent 3780 data as if message blocking is set to *disable*; that is, each transmission block is sent as a separate message buffer to the client, thus enabling the client to preserve transparent record boundaries.

6.18 Block Checking Option (20)

This option determines what characters are included in the block check character (BCC) calculation on transmitted and received data blocks. If the received block check character does not match the BCC value calculated by BSC, the DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_BCC error code is returned to the client application. Block checking can be set to include or exclude the leading BSC control character or can be disabled completely.

If the option is set to *exclude*, the BCC calculation starts with the first data character following STX. This is the normal BSC mode of BCC calculation.

If the option is set to *include*, the STX is included in the BCC calculation for transmitted and received data blocks.

If the option is set to *disable*, a block check character is still generated on transmit and expected on receive, but the receive BCC comparison is not performed and each received data block is sent to the client without regard to any possible error. The BCC calculation is done on transmitted blocks as if the option is set to *exclude*.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `blockChecking` parameter; for example, `blockChecking = "exclFirst"`. See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

Note

When transmitting non-transparent text, embedded SYN characters are not included in the outbound BCC calculation.

6.19 Queue Limit Option (21)

The queue limit option is used to prevent the ICP message buffer pool from being exhausted. Message buffers for all links on the ICP are taken from the same memory pool. This method allows each link to draw buffers as demand increases. However, if a process in the client were to stop reading on one link without disabling the link, incom-

ing messages could deplete the buffer supply and the other links would not be able to obtain buffers.

To prevent this from occurring, a queue limit can be placed on the BSC-to-client message queue for a particular link. When the queue limit is reached, the last buffer on the queue is marked with the `DLI_ICP_ERR_QFULL` error code, and all subsequent blocks from the link are discarded until the client program begins reading messages from the queue. BSC sends NAK for all data blocks that cannot be put on the queue. Control blocks such as data acknowledge, status report, etc. that cannot be placed on the queue, are discarded. When the client program receives the `DLI_ICP_ERR_QFULL` error, it should check the sequence number to determine how much data, if any, was lost.

The client program specifies the maximum number of buffers to be placed in the BSC-to-client queue for a particular link. The queue limit applies to all sessions for a given link. For example, if a queue limit of ten is set on a link that has *Manager*, *Read*, *Control*, and *Trace* sessions established, the BSC software queues ten master buffers, ten read buffers, ten control buffers, and ten trace buffers. The queue limit is also independent for each type of session; for example, if the *Manager* session has all ten buffers queued and waiting to be read, this does not affect the *Control*, *Read*, or *Trace* session's ten-buffer limit.

Specify a zero value to disable queue limiting for a link.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `qLimit` parameter; for example, `qLimit = 0`. See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

6.20 EOM Line Control Option (22)

The BSC 2780/3780 EOM line control option controls the line reverse that occurs after the software sends an EOM block. There are four options: *reverse*, *hold*, *permanent hold*, or *permanent hold with notify*.

If this option is set to *reverse*, the BSC 2780/3780 software automatically turns the line around by sending EOT after it transmits the last block of each message.

If this option is set to *hold*, the BSC 2780/3780 software holds the line and continues sending messages as long as the software has more messages queued for transmission. The BSC 2780/3780 software turns the line around by sending EOT as soon as it sends the ETX block of the last queued message.

If this option is set to *permanent hold*, the BSC 2780/3780 software always holds the line by sending TTDs. The client must turn the line around by sending a Send EOT ([Section 5.4.1.8 on page 125](#)) or Send Disconnect (DLE EOT) command ([Section 5.4.1.9 on page 125](#)). The remote station cannot transmit until the client turns the line around.

If this option is set to *permanent hold with notify*, BSC 2780/3780 operates the same as the *permanent hold* option, but a message is sent to the client if an EOT is sent or received.

Note

Under all option settings, the remote station can force a line turn-around by responding to a text block with RVI instead of ACK.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `eomLineCtrl` parameter; for example, `eomLineCtrl = "reverse"`. See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

6.21 Read Session Option (23)

The read session option determines what happens on the line when data is received on a link for which there is no *Read* session ([Section 2.4 on page 42](#)) currently attached. Under ordinary circumstances a link has a *Manager* session reading incoming data and transmitting outgoing data, or it has a *Manager* session sending data and a *Read* session receiving incoming data. If the *Read* session for a particular link doesn't exist, and this

option is set to *disable* (the default setting), incoming data blocks are routed to the *Manager* session for that link. If the option is set to *enable*, and the *Read* session for a given link is non-existent, incoming data blocks are NAK'd, and any buffers currently queued for the *Read* session are dequeued and discarded. When a *Read* session is resumed on that link, incoming data is sent to the *Read* session as is done normally.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `readSession` parameter; for example, `readSession = "no"`. See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

6.22 Alternating ACK Control Option (24)

The alternating ACK control option defines whether the BSC 2780/3780 software acknowledges BSC data blocks by alternating response codes (ACK0 and ACK1) or by sending a single ACK character.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `altAck` parameter; for example, `altAck = "yes"`. See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

6.23 Line Turnaround Delay Option (25)

This option controls the delay that BSC waits to bid after it receives a line turnaround (EOT) from the remote computer. This option is useful when communicating with older computers that need more time to switch to receive mode. Delay time is specified in tenths of seconds and can range from zero (no delay) to 8192 (819.2 seconds).

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `lineTurnDelay` parameter; for example, `lineTurnDelay = 0`. See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

6.24 TTD/WACK Option (26)

The TTD/WACK option controls whether or not the BSC 2780/3780 software transmits temporary text delay (TTD) and wait acknowledge (WACK) sequences when appropriate.

If this option is set to *normal* (TTD and WACK), and safe store acknowledge is set to *enable* ([Section 6.16](#) and [Section 5.4.1.7 on page 123](#)), the BSC 2780/3780 software transmits a WACK instead of an ACK until the client responds with a safe store acknowledge. The BSC 2780/3780 software transmits a TTD after it transmits an ETB block and has no more client data to send.

If this option is set to *disable*, the BSC 2780/3780 software does not transmit TTDs or WACKs. This option does not affect the reception of TTDs or WACKs.

If this option is set to *TTD only*, the BSC 2780/3780 software transmits a TTD after it transmits an ETB block and has no more client data to send.

If this option is set to *WACK only*, and safe store acknowledge is set to *enable* ([Section 6.16](#) and [Section 5.4.1.7 on page 123](#)), the BSC 2780/3780 software transmits a WACK instead of an ACK until the client responds with a safe store acknowledge.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `ttdWack` parameter; for example, `ttdWack = "normal"`. See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

6.25 RVI Handling Option (28)

The RVI handling option affects the course of action that the BSC 2780/3780 software follows if it receives an RVI during the transmission of a message. See [Section 5.4.3.4 on page 149](#) regarding priority data.

If the *continue* option is selected, the BSC 2780/3780 software continues sending the remaining blocks in a message before turning the line around to receive the priority message.

If the *abort* option is selected, the BSC 2780/3780 software immediately turns the line around after receiving an RVI on an ETB block. The aborted data blocks are returned to the client with the `dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field set to `DLI_PROT_RESP_LOCAL_ACK`, and the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field set to `DLI_ICP_ERR_RVI_RCV_ABORTED`.

When an RVI is received during transmission of a message, the BSC 2780/3780 software indicates the successful transmission of a data block by setting the `dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field to `DLI_PROT_RESP_LOCAL_ACK`, and the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field to `DLI_ICP_ERR_RVI_GOOD_RECV` in the following two cases:

1. a data block is acknowledged by an RVI (when the *continue* option is selected)
2. an ETX block is acknowledged by an RVI (when either *continue* or *abort* is selected).

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `rviHandling` parameter; for example, `rviHandling = "continue"`. See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

Caution

The client sends a priority message to the BSC 2780/3780 software using the priority data codes (`DLI_PROT_SEND_PRIOR_DATA` and `DLI_PROT_SEND_PRIOR_DATA_EOM`); however, the BSC 2780/3780 software receives priority messages as normal data (`DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA` and `DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA_EOM`). The client's only indication of an incoming priority message is the RVI code in the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field (`DLI_ICP_ERR_RVI_GOOD_RECV` or `DLI_ICP_ERR_RVI_RCV_ABORTED`).

6.26 DSR/DCD Delay Option (30)

This option determines the delay in seconds between the time BSC detects a loss of the data set ready (DSR) or the data carrier detect (DCD) modem signal (depending on the setting of the modem control option, [Section 6.15](#)) and the time this loss is reported to the client application program. This option is designed for use in systems where momentary losses of the DSR/DCD signal are common.

When the BSC software detects a loss of the DSR/DCD signal, it delays for the specified number of seconds before reporting the loss with the `DLI_ICP_ERR_DSR_DOWN` error

report. If the signal returns before the delay time expires, the timer is reset and no report is made.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `dsrDelay` parameter; for example, `dsrDelay = 3`. See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

6.27 TTD/WACK Limit Option (31)

This option limits the number of consecutive TTDs and WACKs that can be received by the ICP. If the remote station transmits consecutive WACKs equal in number to this limit, the ICP resets the data link to *idle* mode, sends EOT or DLE EOT (depending on the setting of the line type option in [Section 6.31](#)), and aborts the transmission with the `DLI_ICP_ERR_RETRY_EXCEEDED` error. If the number of consecutive received TTDs exceeds this limit, the ICP ceases responding to TTDs.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `ttdLimit` parameter; for example, `ttdLimit = 0`. See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

6.28 Disconnect Timer Length Option (32)

This option specifies the disconnect timer length in seconds. The timer is started when the BSC 2780/3780 software is in *receive* or *idle* mode (see [Section 5.4.2.4 on page 142](#)). Any legal line activity resets the timer. The action taken when the timer expires depends on the setting of the line type option ([Section 6.31](#)).

If the timer expires on a leased line in *receive* mode, the BSC 2780/3780 software sends EOT on the line, changes to *idle* mode, and notifies the client with the `DLI_ICP_ERR_DISC_TIMEOUT` error. No line action is taken if the timer expires in *idle* mode.

If the timer expires on a dial-up line in either *receive* or *idle* mode, the BSC 2780/3780 software sends DLE EOT on the line, sets the mode to *idle*, and notifies the client with the `DLI_ICP_ERR_DISC_TIMEOUT` error.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `discTimerLen` parameter; for example, `discTimerLen = 0`. See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

6.29 Modem Type Option (35)

This option defines how the BSC 2780/3780 software handles the autodial start and modem configuration commands ([Section 5.4.1.13 on page 131](#) and [Section 5.4.1.14 on page 134](#), respectively). Choose one of four settings: *disable*, *SADL*, *AT*, or *V.25bis*.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `modemType` parameter; for example, `modemType = "SADL"`. See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

6.30 Electrical Interface Option (40)

The electrical interface option applies to the Freeway 1000 model only and allows the electrical interface for each link to be set. The valid values are EIA-232 (default), EIA-485, EIA-530/EIA-449 (balanced, EIA-422), V.35, EIA-449 (unbalanced, EIA-423), and EIA-562. Refer to the *ICP2424 Hardware Description and Theory of Operation* guide for more information on electrical interfaces and cabling options.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `elecInterface` parameter; for example, `elecInterface = "EIA232"`. See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

6.31 Line Type Option (41)

This option controls the action the BSC 2780/3780 software takes when a disconnect timeout ([Section 6.28](#)) or TTD/WACK retry limit ([Section 6.27](#)) occurs. When *leased line* is selected, the BSC 2780/3780 software sends EOT on the line and then notifies the client with the `DLI_ICP_ERR_DISC_TIMEOUT` error. When *dial-up line* is selected, the BSC 2780/3780 software sends DLE EOT on the line and then notifies the client with the `DLI_ICP_ERR_DISC_TIMEOUT` error.

To set this option using the DLI configuration file, use the `lineType` parameter; for example, `lineType = "leased"`. See [Table 7–2 on page 191](#).

BSC Link Configuration Using dlicfg

Note

The term “Freeway” can mean either a Freeway server or an embedded ICP. For the embedded ICP, also refer to the user’s guide for your ICP and operating system (for example, the *ICP2432 User’s Guide for Windows NT (DLITE Interface)*).

7.1 Configuration Overview

[Section 3.1.1 on page 46](#) (BSC 3270) and [Section 5.1.1 on page 106](#) (BSC 2780/3780) summarized your choices for performing ICP link configuration. This chapter describes the BSC link configuration process using the DLI text configuration file as input to the dlicfg preprocessor program to produce a binary configuration file which is used by the dllnit and dlOpen functions.

If you use the DLI configuration file to define link configuration and later need to change a link parameter value, you must shut down your application, modify the DLI text configuration file, rerun dlicfg, and then restart your application using the updated binary configuration file (you do not have to rebuild your application). If you need to make changes to link configuration frequently, consider using the Configure Link command ([Section 3.4.1.4 on page 59](#) or [Section 5.4.1.4 on page 120](#)) in your application.

Even if you choose not to use the DLI configuration file to define the BSC links, you still must configure DLI sessions and TSI connections. You should be familiar with the protocol-independent configuration procedures described in the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide* and the *Freeway Transport Subsystem Interface Reference Guide*.

The DLI and TSI configuration process is a part of the loopback testing procedure described in [Appendix E](#) and the installation procedure described in the *Freeway Server User's Guide*. During your client application development and testing, you might need to perform DLI and TSI configuration repeatedly.

The DLI and TSI configuration procedures are summarized as follows (examples are for BSC 3270):

1. Create or modify a TSI text configuration file specifying the configuration of the TSI connections (for example, `bsc3270altcfg` in the `freeway/client/test/bsc3270` directory).
2. Create or modify a DLI text configuration file specifying the DLI session configuration and optional ICP link configurations for all ICPs and serial communication links in your Freeway system (for example, `bsc3270aldfcg` in the `freeway/client/test/bsc3270` directory).
3. If you have a UNIX or Windows NT system, skip this step. If you have a VMS system, run the `makefc.com` command file from the `[FREEWAY.CLIENT.TEST.BSC3270]` directory to create the foreign commands used for `dlicfg` and `tsicfg`.

```
@MAKEFC <tcp-sys>
```

where `<tcp-sys>` is your TCP/IP package:

MULTINET (for a Multinet system)

TCPWARE (for TCPware system)

UCX (for a UCX system)

VMS example: `@MAKEFC UCX`

4. From the `freeway/client/test/bsc3270` directory, execute `tsicfg` with the text file from Step 1 as input. This creates the TSI binary configuration file in the same directory as the location of the text file (unless a different path is supplied with the optional

filename). If the optional filename is not supplied, the binary file is given the same name as your TSI text configuration file plus a .bin extension.

tsicfg TSI-text-configuration-filename [TSI-binary-configuration-filename]

VMS example: `tsicfg bsc3270altcfg`

UNIX example: `freeway/client/op-sys/bin/tsicfg bsc3270altcfg`

NT example: `freeway\client\op-sys\bin\tsicfg bsc3270altcfg`

5. From the freeway/client/test/bsc3270 directory, execute *dlicfg* with the text file from Step 2 as input. This creates the DLI binary configuration file in the same directory as the location of the text file (unless a different path is supplied with the optional filename). If the optional filename is not supplied, the binary file is given the same name as your DLI text configuration file plus a .bin extension.

dlicfg DLI-text-configuration-filename [DLI-binary-configuration-filename]

VMS example: `dlicfg bsc3270aldcfg`

UNIX example: `freeway/client/op-sys/bin/dlicfg bsc3270aldcfg`

NT example: `freeway\client\op-sys\bin\dlicfg bsc3270aldcfg`

Note

You must rerun *dlicfg* or *tsicfg* whenever you modify the text configuration file so that the DLI or TSI functions can apply the changes. On all but VMS systems, if a binary file already exists with the same name in the directory, the existing file is renamed by appending the .BAK extension. If the renamed file duplicates an existing file in the directory, the existing file is removed by the configuration preprocessor program.

6. If you have a UNIX system, move the TSI and DLI binary configuration files that you created in Step 4 and Step 5 into the appropriate freeway/client/op-sys/bin directory where *op-sys* indicates the operating system: sunos, hpux, solaris, rs_aix, osf1.

UNIX example: `mv bsc3270aldcfg.bin /usr/local/freeway/client/hpux/bin`
`mv bsc3270altcfg.bin /usr/local/freeway/client/hpux/bin`

7. If you have a VMS system, run the `move.com` command file from the [FREEWAY.CLIENT.TEST.BSC3270] directory. This moves the DLI and TSI binary configuration files you created in Step 4 and Step 5 into the `bin` directory for your particular TCP/IP package.

`@MOVE filename <tcp-sys>`

where *filename* is the name of the binary configuration file and

<tcp-sys> is the TCP/IP package:

MULTINET (for a Multinet system)

TCPWARE (for TCPware system)

UCX (for a UCX system)

VMS example: `@MOVE BSC3270ALDCFG.BIN UCX`

8. If you have a Windows NT system, move the TSI and DLI binary configuration files that you created in Step 4 and Step 5 into the appropriate `freeway\client\op-sys\bin` directory where *op-sys* indicates the operating system: `ant` or `int`.

NT example: `copy bsc3270aldcfg.bin \freeway\client\ant\bin`
`copy bsc3270altcfg.bin \freeway\client\ant\bin`

When your application calls the `dlInit` function, the DLI and TSI binary configuration files generated in Step 4 and Step 5 are used to configure the DLI sessions and TSI connections. [Figure 7–1](#) shows the configuration process.

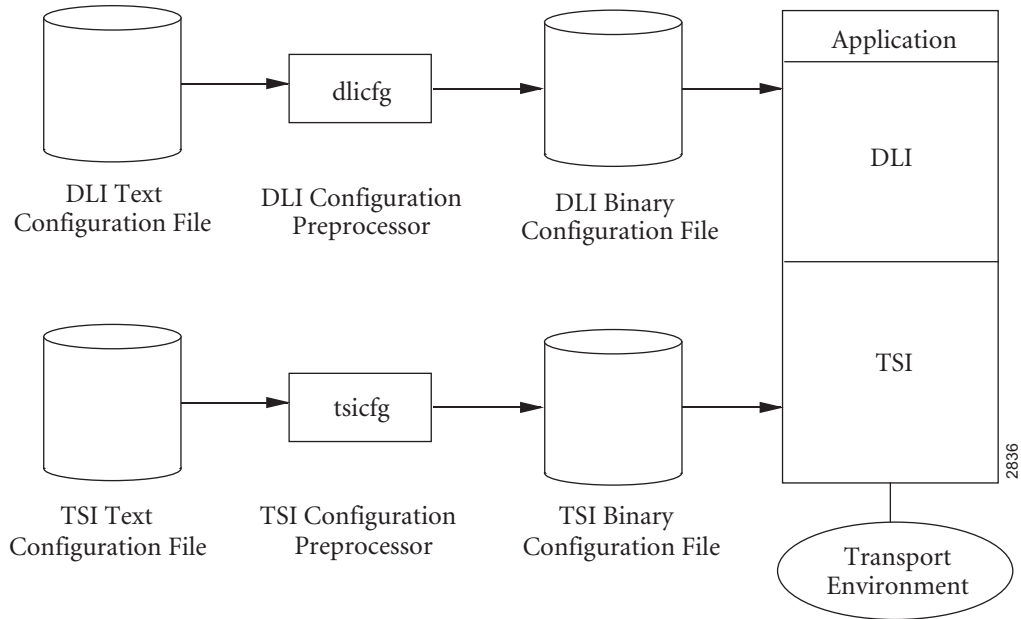


Figure 7-1: DLI and TSI Configuration Process

7.2 DLI Session Configuration

The DLI text configuration file used by the `dlicfg` program consists of the following sections:

- A “main” section which specifies the DLI configuration for non-session-specific operations (described in the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide*)
- One or more additional sections, each specifying a protocol-specific session associated with a particular Freeway serial communication link (port). Each link can be configured independently of the other links. The BSC protocol allows multiple sessions per link.

The protocol-specific session parameters can be divided into two groups:

- Client-related parameters are described in the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide*. For example, each session has an associated TSI connection name which you also specify in your TSI configuration file, though multiple sessions can use the same TSI connection.
- Protocol-specific link parameter values which are different from the defaults shown in [Table 7-1](#) (BSC 3270) or [Table 7-2](#) (BSC 2780/3780). These parameters are optional in the DLI text configuration file. The `dlWrite Configure Link` command also can perform protocol-specific configuration.

[Figure 7-2](#) is an example DLI configuration file showing the “main” section and two BSC 3270 sessions (the only difference for BSC 2780/3780 would be setting `protocol = “BSC3780”`). The DLI client-related parameters are shown in typewriter type. The protocol-specific parameters are shown in **bold typewriter type**. You need to include only those parameters whose values differ from the defaults. [Chapter 4](#) and [Chapter 6](#) describe the link configuration options in detail.

The syntax for the BSC 3270 link configuration parameters is shown in [Table 7-1](#), along with the defaults. The parameter names are case independent but are shown in upper and lower case for readability. [Table 7-2](#) shows the same values for BSC 2780/3780.

```

main                                // DLI "main" section:           //
{
    asyncIO = "no";                 // Wait for I/O completion       //
    tsiCfgName = "bsc3270altcfg.bin"; // TSI binary config file        //
}

ICP0link0                          // First session name:           //
{
    // Client-related parameters: //
    asyncIO = "no";                 // Use blocking I/O              //
    boardNo = 0;                    // First ICP is zero             //
    portNo = 0;                     // First ICP link is zero        //
    protocol = "BSC3270";           // or "BSC3780" if BSC 2780/3780 //
    transport = "client1";          // TSI connection name specified //
                                    // in TSI configuration file     //

    // Optional protocol parameters (different from defaults): //
    dataRate = 4800;                // 4800 bits/second              //
    qLimit = 10;                    // 10-buffer queue limit         //
}

ICP0link1                          // Second session name:          //
{
    // Client-related parameters: //
    asyncIO = "no";                 // Use blocking I/O              //
    boardNo = 0;                    // First ICP is zero             //
    portNo = 1;                     // Second ICP link is one        //
    protocol = "BSC3270";           // or "BSC3780" if BSC 2780/3780 //
    transport = "client1";          // TSI connection name specified //
                                    // in TSI configuration file     //

    // Optional protocol parameters (different from defaults): //
    transBlkSize = 1024;            // 1024-byte transmit blocks     //
    dataTranslation = "Table2";     // Data translation table        //
}

```

Figure 7–2: Example DLI Configuration File for Two BSC 3270 Links

Table 7–1: BSC 3270 ICP Link Parameters and Defaults for Using dlicfg

dlicfg Option Name	Default	Valid Values
dataRate	9600	75, 110, 135, 150, 300, 600, 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, 19200, 38400 or 56000
clockSource	“external”	“external” or “internal”
replyTimerLen	3	1–1800
numLeadSync	3	2–8
protocol	“BSC3270”	“BSC3270”
parity	“odd”	“none”, “odd” or “even”
charSet	“asciilrc8”	“asciilrc8” or “ebcdicrc16”
transBlkSize	512	64–4096
dataTranslation	“table1”	“disable”, “table1” or “table2”
stationPri	“master”	“master” or “slave”
convMode	“no”	“yes” or “no”
retryLimit	3	1–127
pollListDelay	0	0–8192
modemControl	“FDX1”	“HDX1”, “FDX1”, “HDX2”, or “FDX2”
safeStore	“no”	“yes” or “no”
stationID	0	0–32
messageBlocking	“dataBlk”	“disable”, “dataBlk” or “cmdBlk”
blockChecking	“exclFirst”	“disable”, “exclFirst” or “inclFirst”
qLimit	0	0–4096
readSession	“no”	“yes” or “no”
interpollDelay	0	0–8192
textAddr	“normal”	“disable”, “normal”, “autoPrintEm”, or “deviceEm”
dsrDelay	3	1–127
elecInterface	“EIA232”	“EIA232”, “EIA485”, “EIA530”, “V35”, “unbEIA449” or “EIA562”
msgBlkSize ¹	1024	256–8192
writeType ²	“normal”	“normal” or “transparent”

¹ The msgBlkSize parameter allows the DLI to configure the ICP message buffer size (equivalent to the Set ICP Message Buffer Size command in [Section 3.4.1.3 on page 58](#)).

² If you use dlWrite without optional arguments, one of the EOM types is used, depending on the writeType DLI configuration parameter. If writeType is set to “normal,” DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA_EOM is used; if it is set to “transparent,” DLI_PROT_SEND_TRANS_DATA_EOM is used.

Table 7–2: BSC 2780/3780 ICP Link Parameters and Defaults for Using dlicfg

dlicfg Option Name	Default	Valid Values
dataRate	9600	75, 110, 135, 150, 300, 600, 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, 19200, 38400, 56000 or 64000
clockSource	“external”	“external” or “internal”
replyTimerLen	3	1–1800
numLeadSync	3	2–8
protocol	“BSC3780”	“BSC3780”
parity	“odd”	“none”, “odd” or “even”
charSet	“ebcdicrc16”	“asciirc8”, “ebcdicrc16”, “asciirc16”, “ebcdicccitt0” or “asciicitt0”
transBlkSize	512	64–4096
dataTranslation	“table1”	“disable”, “table1” or “table2”
stationPri	“slave”	“master” or “slave”
spaceComp	“no”	“yes” or “no”
convMode	“no”	“yes” or “no”
retryLimit	3	1–127
waitBidDelay	10	0–8192
modemControl	“FDX1”	“HDX1”, “FDX1”, “HDX2”, “FDX2”, “HDX3”, “FDX3”, “HDX4” or “FDX4”
safeStore	“no”	“yes” or “no”
messageBlocking	“dataBlk”	“disable” or “dataBlk”
blockChecking	“exclFirst”	“disable”, “exclFirst” or “inclFirst”
qLimit	0	0–4096
eomLineCtrl	“reverse”	“reverse”, “hold”, “permHold” or “permHoldNotify”
readSession	“no”	“yes” or “no”
altAck	“yes”	“yes” or “no”
lineTurnDelay	0	0–8192
ttdWack	“normal”	“disable”, “normal”, “ttdOnly” or “wackOnly”
rviHandling	“continue”	“continue” or “abort”

Table 7–2: BSC 2780/3780 ICP Link Parameters and Defaults for Using dlicfg (*Cont'd*)

dlicfg Option Name	Default	Valid Values
dsrDelay	3	1–127
ttdLimit	0	0–8192
discTimerLen	0	0–1800
modemType	“SADL”	“none”, “SADL”, “V25bis” or “AT”
elecInterface	“EIA232”	“EIA232”, “EIA485”, “EIA530”, “V35”, “unbEIA449” or “EIA562”
lineType	“leased”	“leased” or “dialUp”
msgBlkSize ¹	1024	256–8192
writeType ²	“normal”	“normal” or “transparent”

¹ The msgBlkSize parameter allows the DLI to configure the ICP message buffer size (equivalent to the Set ICP Message Buffer Size command in [Section 5.4.1.3 on page 119](#)).

² If you use dlWrite without optional arguments, one of the EOM types is used, depending on the writeType DLI configuration parameter. If writeType is set to “normal,” DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA_EOM is used; if it is set to “transparent,” DLI_PROT_SEND_TRANS_DATA_EOM is used.

BSC 3270 Line Control Procedures

This appendix defines line control procedures for the BSC 3270 protocol.

Note

This appendix, along with [Chapter 3](#) and [Chapter 4](#), should be read by programmers who are interfacing an application program to a BSC 3270 environment. If you are programming BSC 2780/3780, refer to [Chapter 5](#), [Chapter 6](#) and [Appendix B](#).

A.1 Control Station Procedures

When a link is configured as a control station, it operates much like an IBM 3705 communications controller in BSC mode. All data transfer takes place between the control station and one of up to 32 tributary stations. The control station uses general poll, specific poll, and device selection sequences to transfer data to and from each tributary.

A.1.1 General Poll

A general poll is a request for data from all devices attached to a control unit. The format of the general poll is shown in [Figure A-1](#). CUA is the control unit address and GPA is the general poll indicator. The general poll indicator has a hexadecimal value of 7F (EBCDIC) or 22 (ASCII).

The BSC 3270 software begins transmitting general polls on the line immediately after the client starts the link by opening a session using `dlOpen` (assuming the `cfgLink` and `enable` parameters are set to “yes” in the DLI configuration file). General polls are issued

SYN	SYN	EOT	PAD	SYN	SYN	CUA	CUA	GPA	GPA	ENQ	PAD
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	------------	------------	------------	------------	-----	-----

Figure A–1: General Poll Format

to control units in the order specified in the poll list given to the ICP in the Set Poll List command ([Section 3.4.1.7 on page 62](#)). Each control unit in the poll list is polled for input until the end of the list is reached. The BSC 3270 software then delays for the period specified by the poll list delay option ([Section 4.13 on page 95](#)). At the end of the delay, if any, the general polling sequence starts again.

A control unit responds to a general poll with one of the following:

- data
- device status information
- EOT (nothing to send)

If a control unit fails to respond to a general poll within the specified timeout period, the client is notified with the `DLI_PROT_RESP_ERROR` error report containing the `DLI_ICP_ERR_STATION_DOWN` error code. The client can then remove the control unit from the poll list by issuing a Set Poll List command. If the control unit is not removed from the list, it continues to be polled during subsequent iterations through the poll list.

A.1.2 Device Selection

When the client application program writes a block of data to a link, the BSC 3270 software issues a device selection sequence after the completion of the next general poll. The device selection sequence is shown in [Figure A–2](#). CUA is the control unit selection address and DA is the device address. These addresses are derived from the CU and device numbers specified by the client application program in the `dlWritepOptArgs.usProtCircuitID` field.

SYN	SYN	EOT	PAD	SYN	SYN	CUA	CUA	DA	DA	ENQ	PAD
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	------------	------------	-----------	-----------	-----	-----

Figure A–2: Device Selection Sequence

In order to give equal priority to input and output, at least one general poll is issued after each device selection sequence.

A.1.3 Specific Poll

The client application program may send a specific poll on the line by issuing a Specific Poll command ([Section 3.4.1.9 on page 66](#)) at any time while the link is active. Upon receipt of this command, the BSC 3270 software issues a specific poll to the CU and DU specified in the command. If the tributary has data or status to send, it appears to the client as received data. Otherwise, BSC 3270 generates the DLI_ICP_ERR_STATION_UP or DLI_ICP_ERR_STATION_DOWN error report as a response.

If a reverse interrupt (RVI) is received in response to a device selection sequence, the BSC 3270 software discards all the messages in the transmit queue and sends the client the DLI_PROT_RESP_LOCAL_ACK response with error code DLI_ICP_ERR_NO_CLIENT (device busy) for each message discarded. The BSC 3270 software then automatically issues a specific poll to that device to obtain any pending sense/status information.

A.2 Tributary Station Procedures

When a link is configured as a tributary station, its operation is similar to that of an IBM 3274 control unit with one or more “virtual” devices attached. When receiving data, the CU specified in the station ID option ([Section 4.16 on page 97](#)) determines when the BSC software responds on the link (unless the client is in test mode, as described below). For transmissions, the client application program determines which device it wishes to emulate by placing the proper CU and DU in the dlWrite pOptArgs.usProtCircuitID field. The CU should not differ from the configured station ID under normal circumstances.

A.2.1 Normal Mode

A tributary link operates in normal mode when it acts as only one control unit. Normal mode is in effect when the station ID option is set to a CU number from 0 to 31.

When the link is started, the BSC 3270 responds to only those poll and select sequences that contain the configured control number. All other sequences are received but ignored.

A.2.2 Test Mode

If the station ID option is set to 32, the tributary link enters “test mode.” While in this configuration, the tributary link can respond as multiple control units on the same line. The tributary link specifies the active control unit numbers with a Set Poll List command ([Section 3.4.1.7 on page 62](#)). In test mode, the tributary link responds to poll and select sequences directed to any of the control units specified in the poll list and ignores the rest.

A.3 Line Up/Down Reporting

If CTS and/or clock signals are missing, then BSC 3270 notifies the client with the DLI_PROT_RESP_ERROR error report containing the DLI_ICP_ERR_XMIT_TIMEOUT error code. At that time, all ICP message buffers that are queued for transmission are discarded. The client receives the DLI_PROT_RESP_LOCAL_ACK data acknowledge with the DLI_ICP_ERR_XMIT_TIMEOUT error code for each discarded message buffer.

If the signal(s) return and line activity resumes, BSC 3270 sends the client the DLI_PROT_RESP_ERROR error report containing the DLI_ICP_ERR_LINE_UP informational code, and normal line operation is resumed.

A.4 Virtual Device Procedures

The following sections describe some of the line procedures involving virtual devices. See [Section 3.4.1.11 on page 67](#) to create virtual devices, [Section 3.4.1.12 on page 69](#) to change the status of virtual devices, and [Section 3.4.2.8 on page 76](#) to request a virtual device status report. A review of these sections would be helpful before reading the following sections.

A.4.1 Virtual Printer Operation

When a device is created as a virtual printer, the ICP checks the incoming 3270 command byte for the “start print” bit set in the Write command or in the Copy command. If the start print bit is set, the ICP responds to the data with WACK, sends the data to the host with the DLI_ICP_ERR_DEVICE_BUSY error code, and sets the DB bit for that device. The host application must then send a Change Virtual 3270 Device Status command to clear the device busy condition for that device. [Figure A–3](#) shows a typical sequence of events involving a virtual printer.

If an error occurs during printout (such as the printer running out of paper), the client application must inform the ICP of the printer error so that the ICP can send the appropriate responses to the control station. In this case, the host sends a Change Virtual 3270 Device Status command to change the status to “device unavailable.” The ICP considers that device unavailable until the client informs otherwise. [Figure A–4](#) shows a typical sequence of events involving a printer error.

A.4.2 Virtual Display Operation

A virtual device configured as a display terminal is similar to a printer device except that the “start print” bit in the Write command or Copy command is ignored by the ICP, and the incoming data is sent to the host without the device busy error. [Figure A–5](#) shows how a virtual display handles a write command with the “start print” bit set.

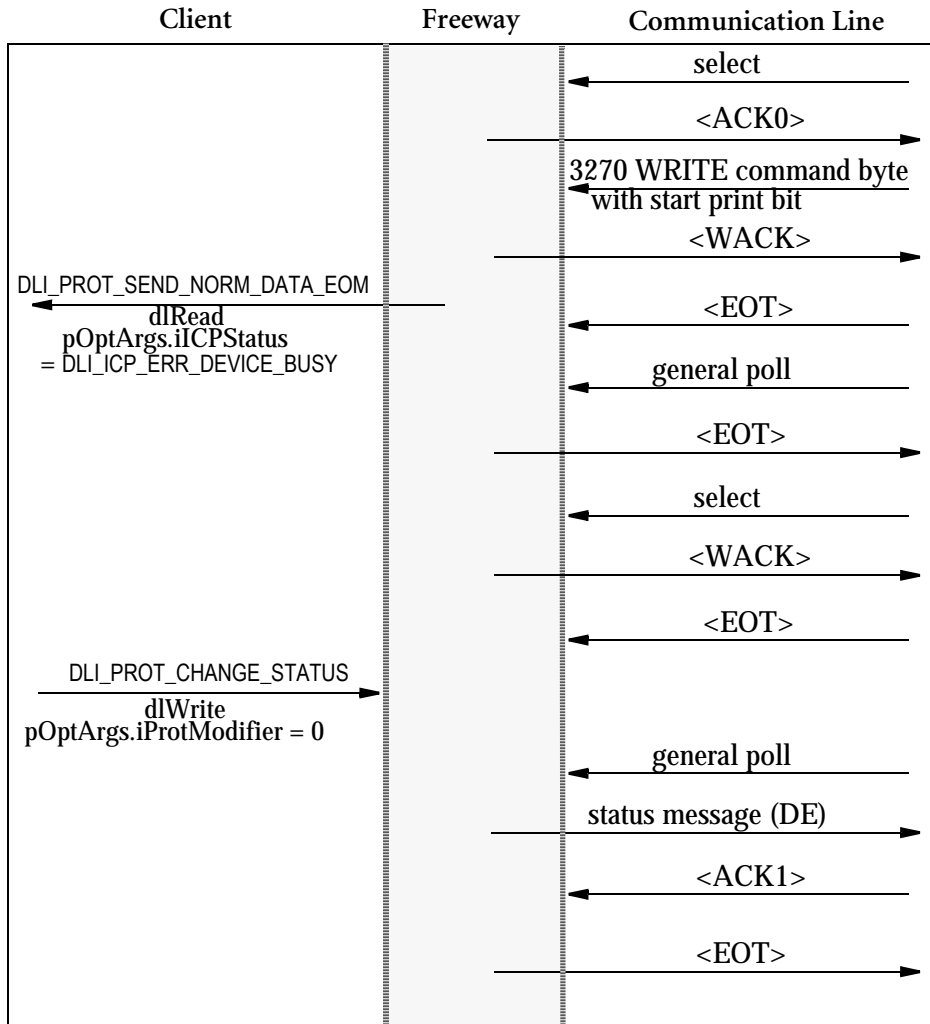


Figure A-3: Normal Operation for Virtual Printer

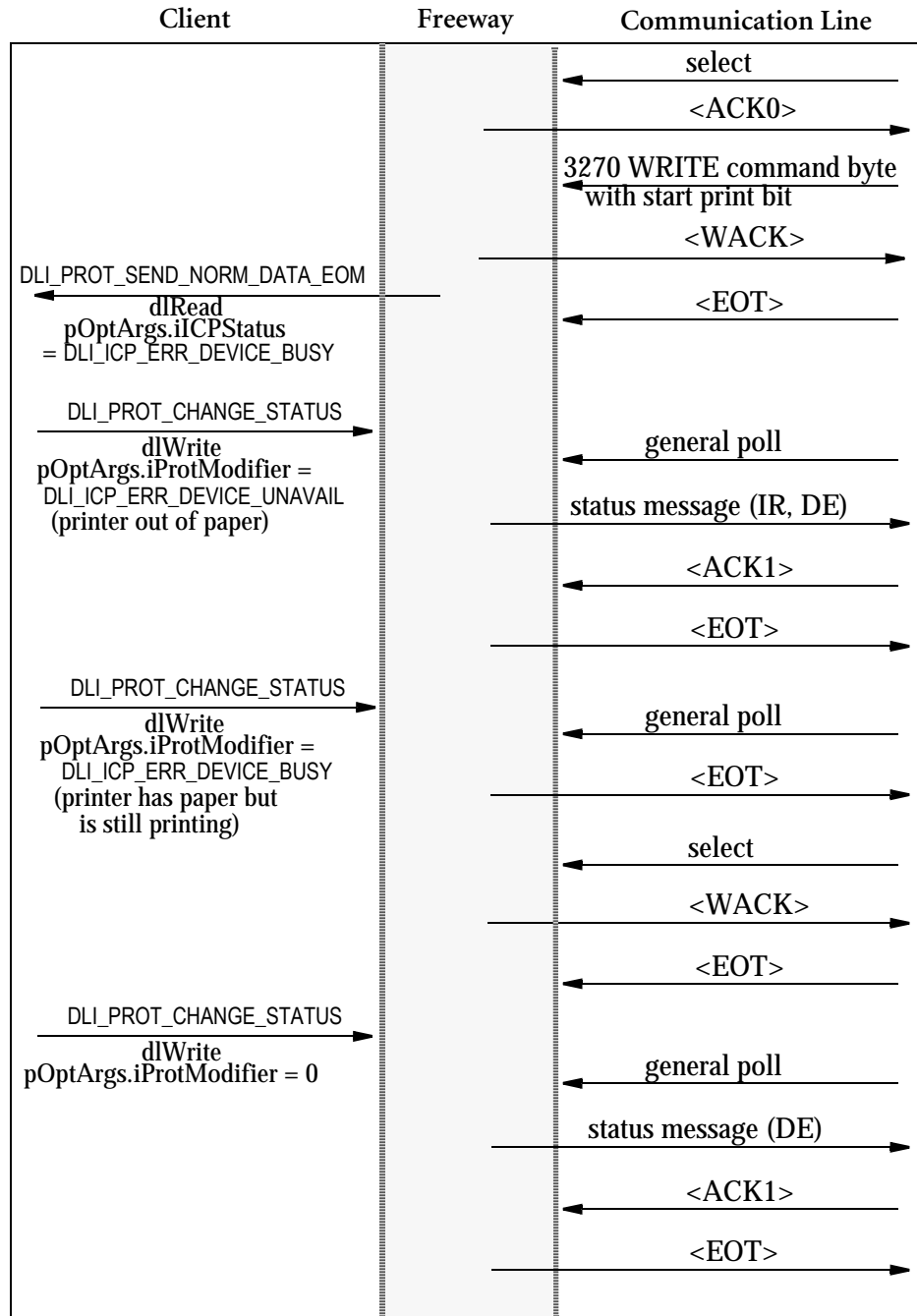


Figure A-4: Printer Error During Printout

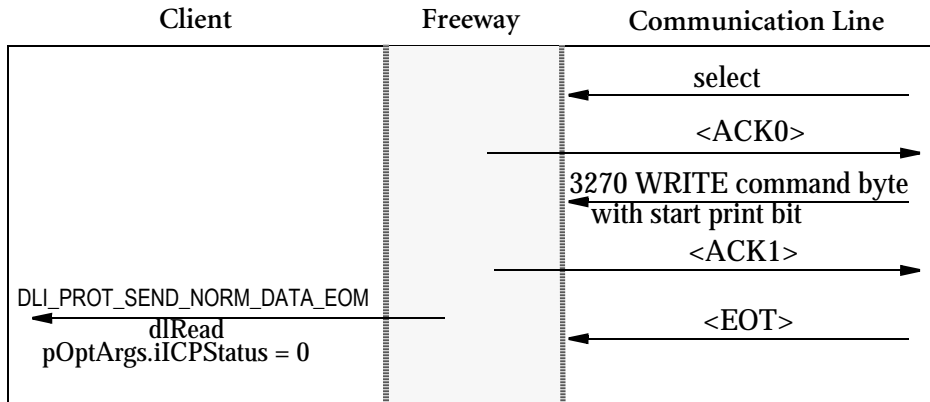


Figure A-5: Normal Operation of Virtual Display

A.4.3 3270 Command Checking

A tributary link scans the incoming data stream for the presence of valid 3270 commands for devices configured either as displays or printers. First, the link checks for the presence of the escape (ESC) character that precedes each BSC 3270 command. Second, it checks the 3270 command byte for a valid Read, Write, Copy, or Erase command. If a bad command is found, line response and status maintained are determined by the type of command error that occurred as shown in [Figure A-6](#).

Normally, the BSC 3270 master sends EOT when it receives a WACK or RVI response to a select sequence. If the BSC 3270 master sends a Write or Copy command instead of EOT, the ICP discards the command, sends EOT to the BSC 3270 master, and sets the appropriate status bits. [Figure A-7](#) and [Figure A-8](#) show two examples.

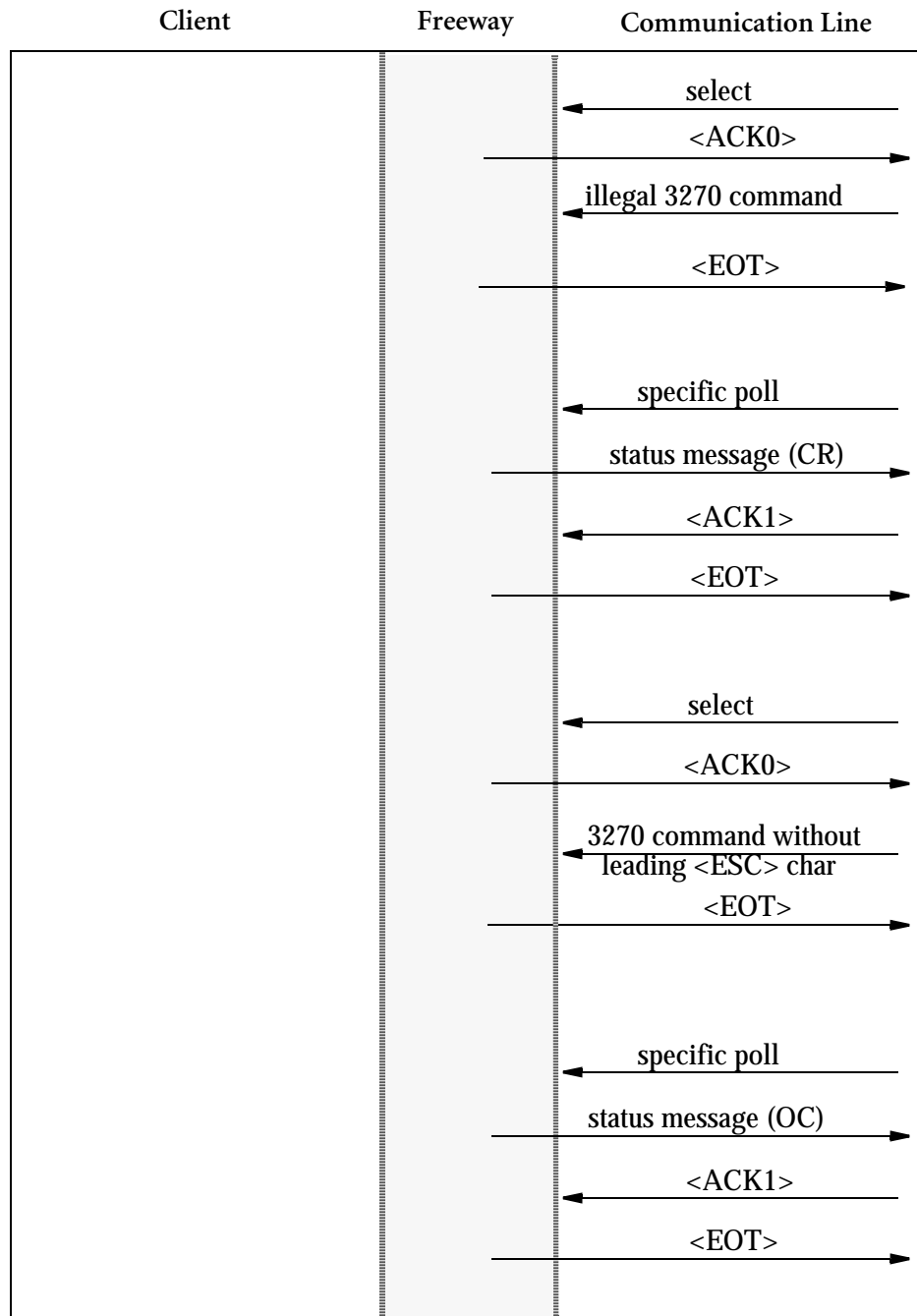


Figure A-6: BSC 3270 Command Checking

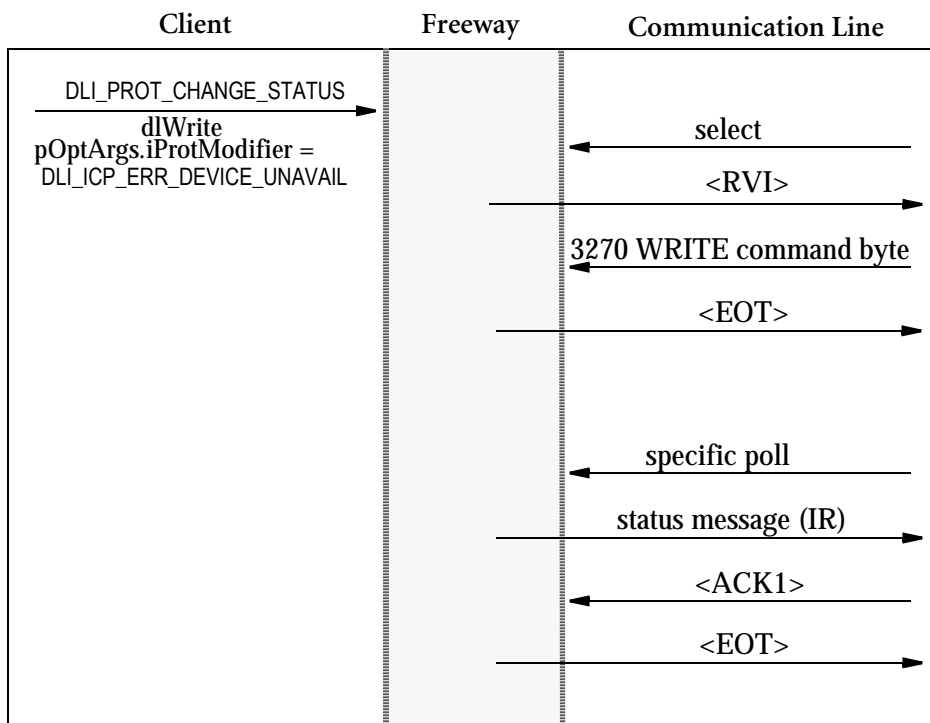


Figure A-7: RVI Ignored by BSC 3270 Master

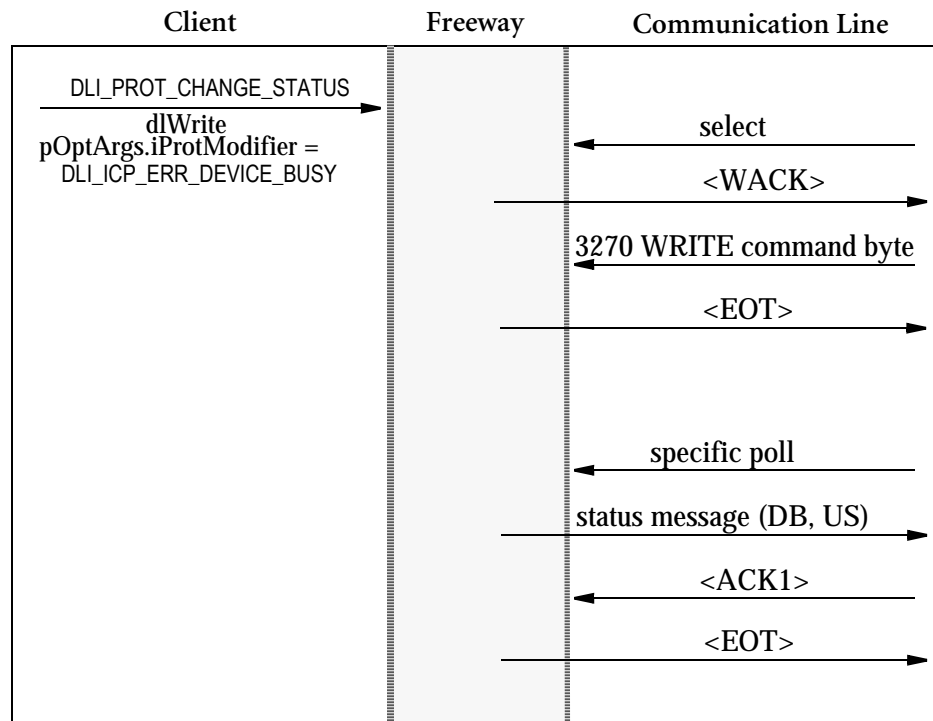


Figure A-8: WACK Ignored by BSC 3270 Master

A.4.4 BSC 3270 Sense/Status Message

Status and sense conditions are recorded by the BSC 3274 control unit for each attached device. These conditions include busy or ready status or detected errors. All remote status and sense conditions are combined into two bytes (per device), which are always sent in a status message from the 3274. In EBCDIC code, the sense/status bytes are sent as printable EBCDIC characters. In ASCII code, they are translated to ASCII characters before they are sent. Figure A–9 shows the sense/status bytes as they would appear in Sun memory byte ordering. Figure A–10 shows the format of a status message as it is transmitted on the communication line.

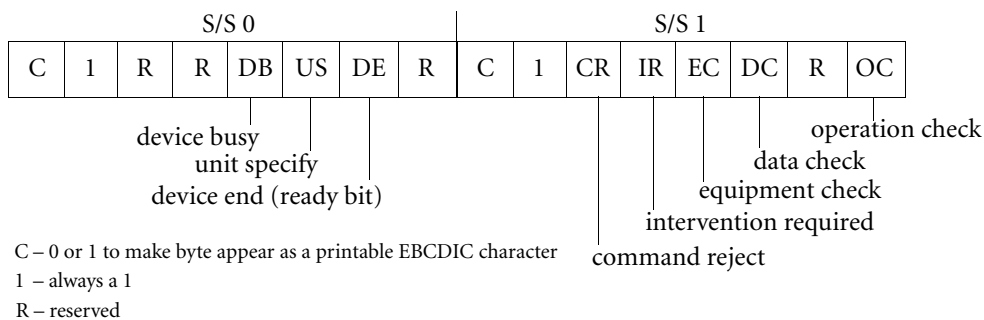
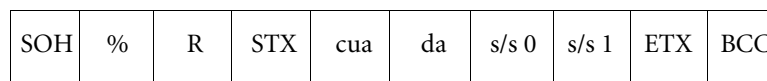


Figure A–9: BSC 3270 Sense/Status Bytes



cua = control unit address
 da = device address
 s/s 0 = sense/status byte 0
 s/s 1 = sense/status byte 1

Figure A–10: BSC 3270 Status Message Format

The ICP sends status messages to the BSC 3270 master based on changes in device status or errors detected in the 3270 command stream. Although there are 256 possible

combinations of status and sense bits, only a portion of this total is normally used. These combinations are listed in Figure 4–9 of the *3274 Control Unit Description and Programmer's Guide, IBM*. A tributary link of the ICP can maintain any of the combinations of sense and status bits shown in [Table A–1](#).

Table A–1: Sense/Status Bit Combinations

Sense/Status Bits	Description
CR	An invalid or illegal 3270 command is received.
OC	An invalid command sequence is received (ESC is not the second data character).
IR	The addressed device is unavailable
IR, DE	A device that was previously recorded as ready, available, and busy is now not ready and not busy.
DB	The addressed device is busy.
DB, US	A write or copy command was directed to a busy device.
DE	A device previously recorded as busy is now not busy, or a device previously recorded as unavailable is now available.

Normally, The ICP sends any pending status to the BSC 3270 master in response to a specific poll. There are some instances where pending status is sent in response to the next general poll. These instances involve changes in 3270 virtual device status conditions. [Table A–2](#) lists the status condition changes that cause a status message to be generated in response to a general poll.

Table A–2: Condition Changes that Generate Responses to General Polls

Device Condition Change	Status Bits Set
Non-existent to available	DE
Unavailable to available	DE
Busy to available	DE
Busy to unavailable	IR, DE

A.5 Station Up/Down Reporting

Station up/down reporting is based on line activity (as opposed to DSR/DCD up/down reporting, [Section A.6](#), which is based on modem signals). When a link is started, all stations are assumed down. As stations become active, the BSC 3270 software notifies the client with the DLI_PROT_RESP_ERROR error report containing the DLI_ICP_ERR_STATION_UP information code. When a station down condition is detected, BSC 3270 notifies the client with the DLI_PROT_RESP_ERROR error report containing the DLI_ICP_ERR_STATION_DOWN error code. Station up/down messages are generated when there is a change in station status or as a response to a Specific Poll command.

A link configured as a control station considers a remote tributary station (control unit) to be up when it receives a response to a poll or select sequence. It considers a station down when the station fails to respond to a general poll sequence within the specified timeout and retry limits.

A link configured as a tributary station reports its connection to the control station as an up/down indication. A tributary considers itself up when a poll or select sequence with the proper control unit number is received. The tributary considers itself down when a valid poll or select sequence is not received within the time period specified by the interpoll delay option ([Section 4.21 on page 101](#)).

A.6 DSR/DCD Up/Down Reporting

If the data set ready (DSR) or the data carrier detect (DCD) modem signal (depending on the setting of the modem control option, [Section 4.14 on page 95](#)) is lost while a link is active, BSC 3270 suspends line operations for that link and notifies the client with the DLI_PROT_RESP_ERROR error report containing the DLI_ICP_ERR_DSR_DOWN error code. At that time, all ICP message buffers that are queued for transmission are discarded. The client receives the DLI_PROT_RESP_LOCAL_ACK data acknowledge with the DLI_ICP_ERR_DSR_DOWN error code for each discarded message buffer.

When the DSR/DCD signal returns, BSC sends the client the DLI_PROT_RESP_ERROR error report containing the DLI_ICP_ERR_DSR_UP information code, and normal line operation resumes.

DSR/DCD up/down reporting is disabled when the modem control option is set to HDX-2 or FDX-2.

A.7 Freeway/Line Interface

Freeway communicates to remote devices through serial connectors. The ports can be connected to standard modem cables.

A.8 Modem Control Lines

[Table A–3](#) lists the EIA-232 modem control lines used by the BSC software.

Table A–3: EIA-232 Modem Control Lines

Signal	Pin	Direction	Description
RTS	4	Output	For half-duplex, RTS is turned on just before transmission is started and turned off when transmission is complete.
CTS	5	Input	CTS is checked after RTS is turned on but prior to transmit. If CTS is on at this point, transmit is started and further changes in the CTS pin are ignored until the next block is ready to be transmitted. If CTS is off at this point, transmission is delayed until the CTS pin is turned on.
DSR	6	Input	DSR is monitored by the BSC software and its status is reported in the link status report.
DCD	8	Input	DCD is monitored by the BSC software, and its status is reported in the link status report.
DTR	20	Output	DTR is turned on when the link is started and turned off when the link is stopped.

A.9 Clock Signals

The BSC communication interface is designed to use either externally or internally generated clock signals. Clocking is selected through the clock source option ([Section 4.2 on page 89](#)). The BSC software always uses receive clocking provided by the receive data source. Under external clocking, BSC receives its transmit clocks from the remote computer. Under internal clocking, the transmit clock is internally generated and also output to the remote computer. For internal clocking on the Freeway 2000/4000, the hardware clock jumper for each link must be set as described in the *Freeway ICP6000R/ICP6000X Hardware Description* manual. If you need to set internal clocking, call the Protogate customer support number given in the *Preface*. For the Freeway 1000, refer to the *ICP2424 Hardware Description and Theory of Operation*.

[Table A–4](#) defines the EIA-232 clock signals used by the BSC software.

Table A–4: EIA-232 Clock Signals

Signal	Pin	Direction	Description
XMT CLK	15	Input	External clocking: transmit clock Internal clocking: not used
RCV CLK	17	Input	External clocking: receive clock Internal clocking: receive clock
EXT CLK	24	Output	External clocking: not used Internal clocking: server-generated Clock signal to be connected to the XMT CLK of the local interface and the RCV CLK pin of the remote interface.

A.10 Idle Line Condition

When no data is being transmitted on a full-duplex circuit, the transmit line is held in a marking condition (all one-bits are transmitted).

BSC 2780/3780 Control Procedures

This appendix defines the control procedures for the BSC 2780/3780 protocol.

Note

This appendix, along with [Chapter 5](#) and [Chapter 6](#), should be read by programmers who are interfacing an application program to a BSC 2780/3780 environment. If you are programming BSC 3270, refer to [Chapter 3](#), [Chapter 4](#) and [Appendix A](#).

B.1 BSC 2780/3780 Communications Control

The client and BSC 2780/3780 software use the command and response messages to control data communication on the links. The following sections present typical data exchange situations. For each of these examples, the ICP message buffer size is 1024 bytes, and the transmission buffer size is 256 bytes.

B.1.1 BSC 2780/3780 Software Initialization

After downloading the software to the ICP, issue a `dlOpen` request. If the `cfgLink` and enable DLI configuration parameters are set to “no,” an optional Set ICP Message Buffer Size command ([Section 5.4.1.3 on page 119](#)) can be issued. If you do not issue the message buffer command, the size defaults to 1024 bytes. When the `cfgLink` and enable DLI configuration parameters are set to “yes” (their default values), the DLI automatically configures the message buffer size during `dlOpen`, using the value supplied in the `msgBlkSize` parameter ([page 192](#)).

[Figure B–1](#) shows the download and buffer configuration sequence.

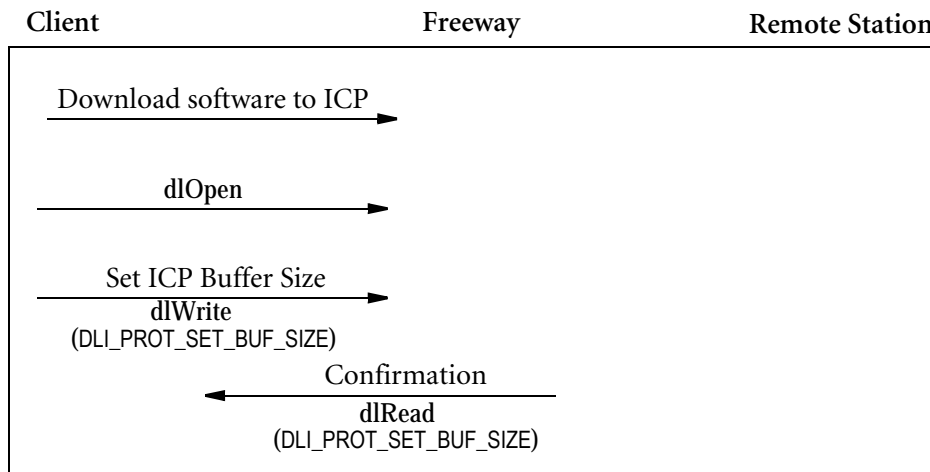


Figure B–1: Software Initialization Sequence

B.1.2 Normal Link Start

To start link operation, the client issues a Link Configuration command ([Section 5.4.1.4 on page 120](#)) followed by Start Link command ([Section 5.4.1.5 on page 121](#)) to enable the link. If the client does not issue the link configuration command, the configuration set by the previous link configuration command (or the default configuration) takes effect when the link begins operation. If the `cfgLink` and `enable DLI` configuration parameters are set to “yes” (their default values), the DLI automatically performs the link configuration and enabling, using the configuration settings supplied in the session definition in the DLI text configuration file ([Section 7.2 on page 188](#)).

[Figure B–2](#) shows an example start sequence.

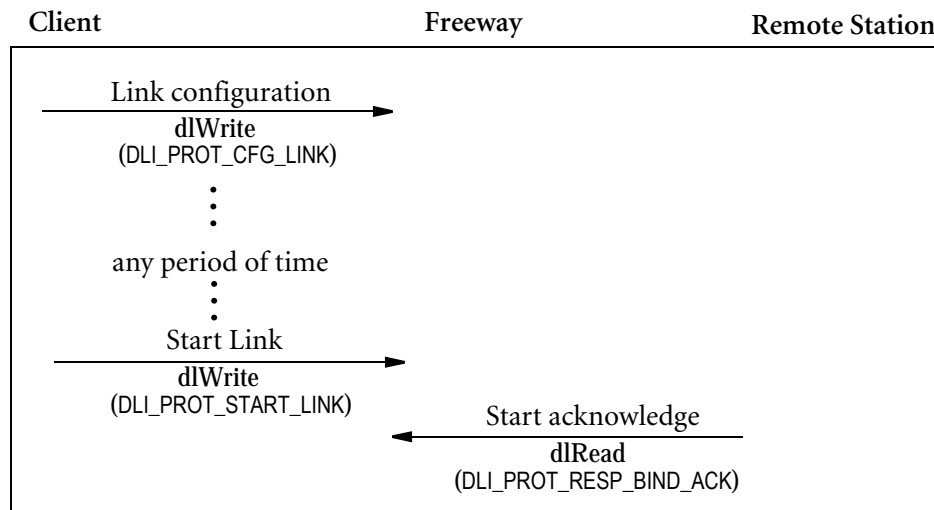


Figure B–2: Start Link Sequence Using Two Commands

Note

In blocking mode the start acknowledge is implied by a successful Start Link command.

B.1.3 Signon Procedure using BSC 2780/3780 Software Commands

The BSC 2780/3780 software provides an optional initial signon procedure to allow the local and remote clients to exchange and validate station IDs after the links are enabled but before transferring data. [Figure B–3](#) and [Figure B–4](#) illustrate the difference in the signon sequence due to a change in the timing of the first data block from the client.

In both figures, the initiating (local) client starts by sending a Signon command ([Section 5.4.1.10 on page 126](#)) to the BSC 2780/3780 software with its station ID in the output buffer of the command. This action causes the sequence LOCAL<ENQ> to be transmitted on the line. When the remote station responds with REMOTE<ACK0>, the BSC 2780/3780 software sends a signon response to the client with the remote ID in the data area of the response. The local client then validates the remote ID and, if the ID is valid, sends another Signon command to the BSC 2780/3780 software as a confirmation.

In [Figure B–3](#), the client sends the first data block within the allowed two-second time interval, causing the data to be sent on the communication line rather than EOT. In [Figure B–4](#), the client delays the first data block beyond the allotted two-second time period, resulting in an EOT followed by a normal line bid sequence before the data is sent on the communication line.

[Figure B–5](#) shows a typical signon sequence in receive mode followed by data.

Note

As shown in the figures, each Signon command results in a `dlRead` Signon response (the `pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field is set to `DLI_PROT_SEND_SIGNON` by the DLI).

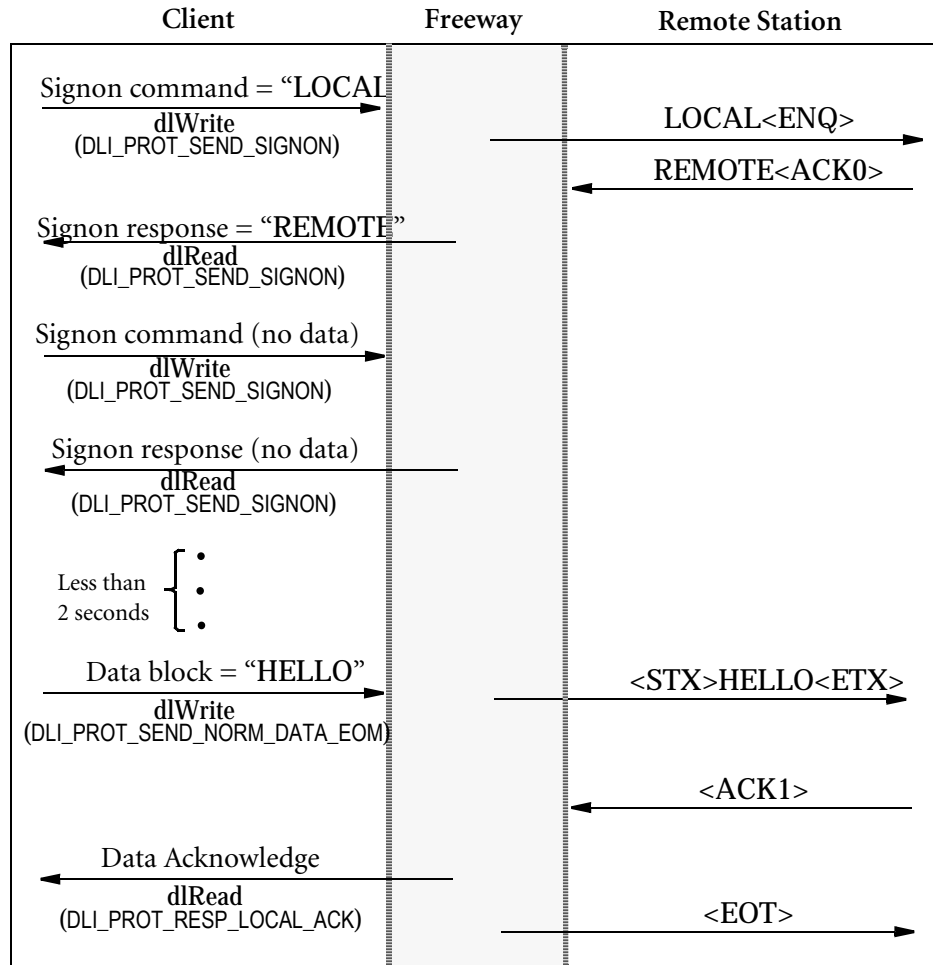


Figure B-3: Signon Procedure (Transmit with Immediate Data)

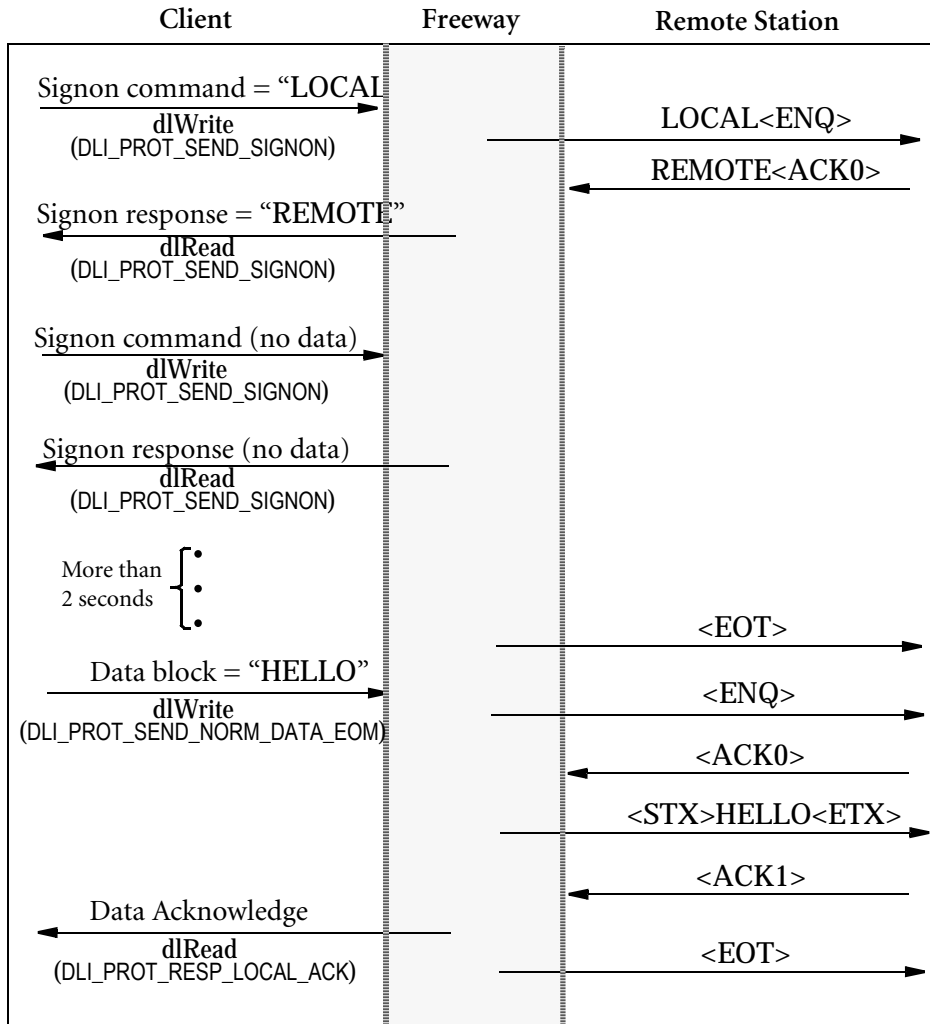


Figure B-4: Signon Procedure (Transmit with Delayed Data)

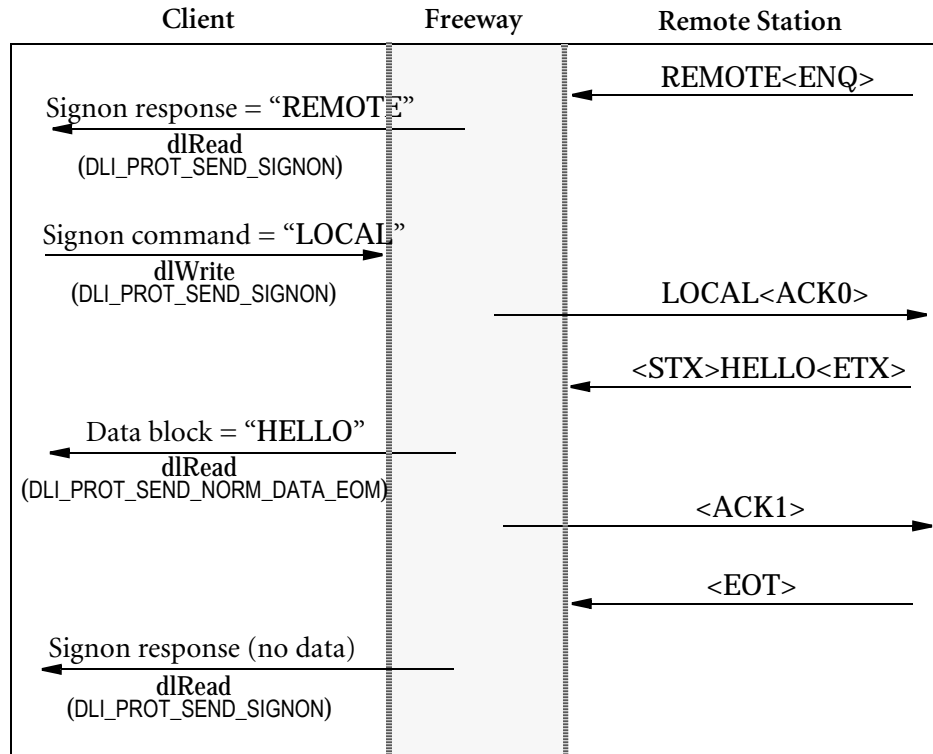


Figure B–5: Signon Procedure (Receive)

B.1.4 Data Reception

The BSC 2780/3780 software can receive data at any time after the link is started. The client application program should have a `dlRead` request issued at all times so the received data can be transferred to the client. [Figure B-6](#) is an example of how the BSC 2780/3780 software receives a typical data message.

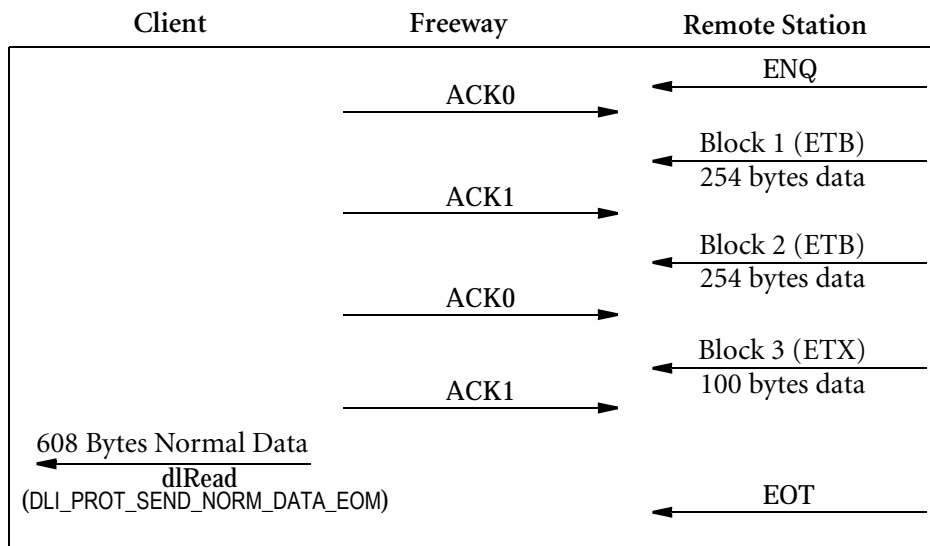


Figure B-6: Data Reception Sequence

B.1.5 Normal Data Transmission

In Figure B–7, the client program sends a two-block message to the BSC 2780/3780 software to be transmitted on the line. The BSC 2780/3780 software segments the data into transmission blocks, sends the ETB/ETX blocks, sends the two acknowledgments to the client program, then turns the line around.

Note

The STX and ETX control characters are included in the transmission block size. For example, a 256-byte transmission block can transmit only 254 bytes of actual data.

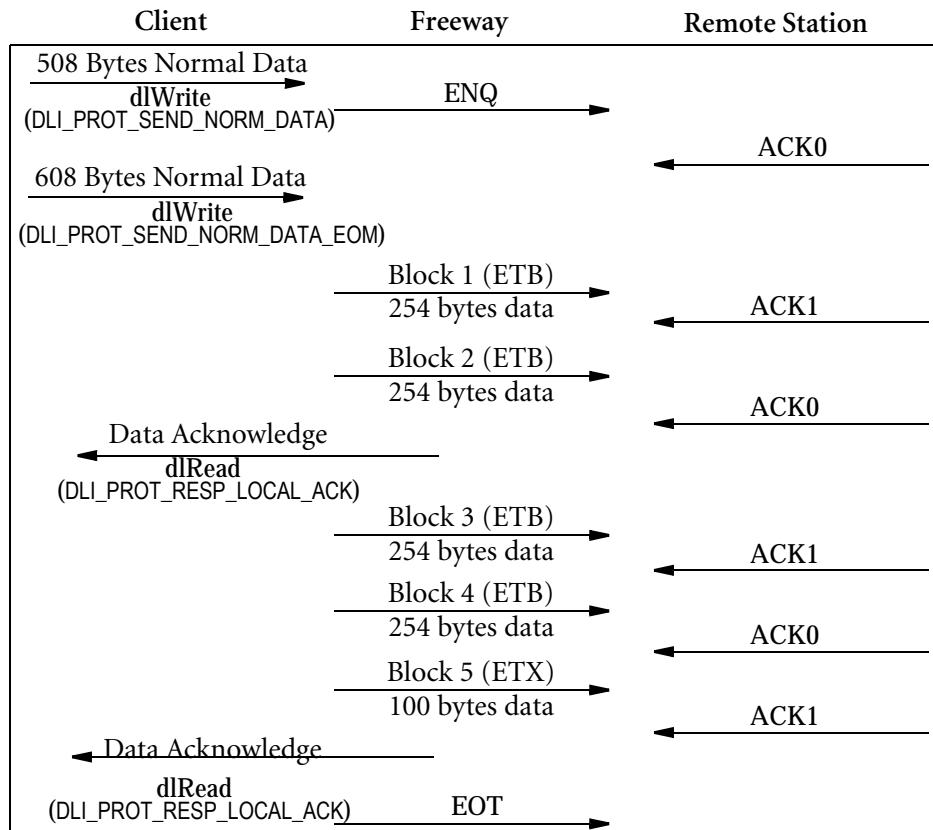


Figure B–7: Normal Data Transmission Sequence

B.1.6 Priority Data Reception

Assuming the BSC 2780/3780 software has the RVI handling option ([Section 6.25 on page 179](#)) configured for *continue*, if the BSC 2780/3780 software receives a reverse interrupt during transmission, the message transmission finishes normally, and an RVI received code is returned in the error field of the data acknowledgment. The BSC 2780/3780 software then sends EOT to reverse the line and prepares to receive the priority data message. After the priority message has been received, the BSC 2780/3780 software continues transmission by sending the next message. In [Figure B–8](#), the BSC 2780/3780 software has the RVI handling option configured for *continue*, and a priority message interrupts a transmission sequence of two messages.

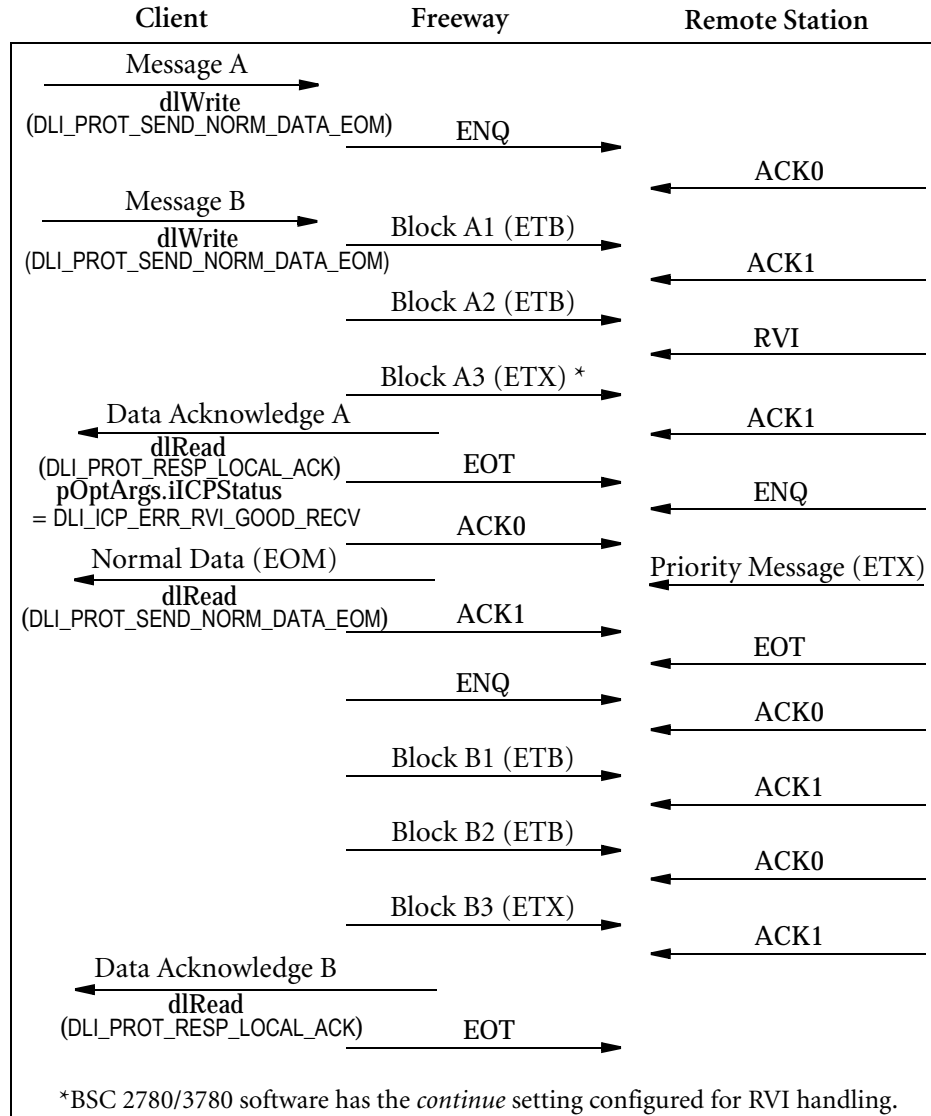


Figure B–8: Two-message Sequence with Priority Message Interrupt

B.1.7 Recoverable Errors In Transmission

Figure B–9 shows how the BSC 2780/3780 software handles recoverable line errors.

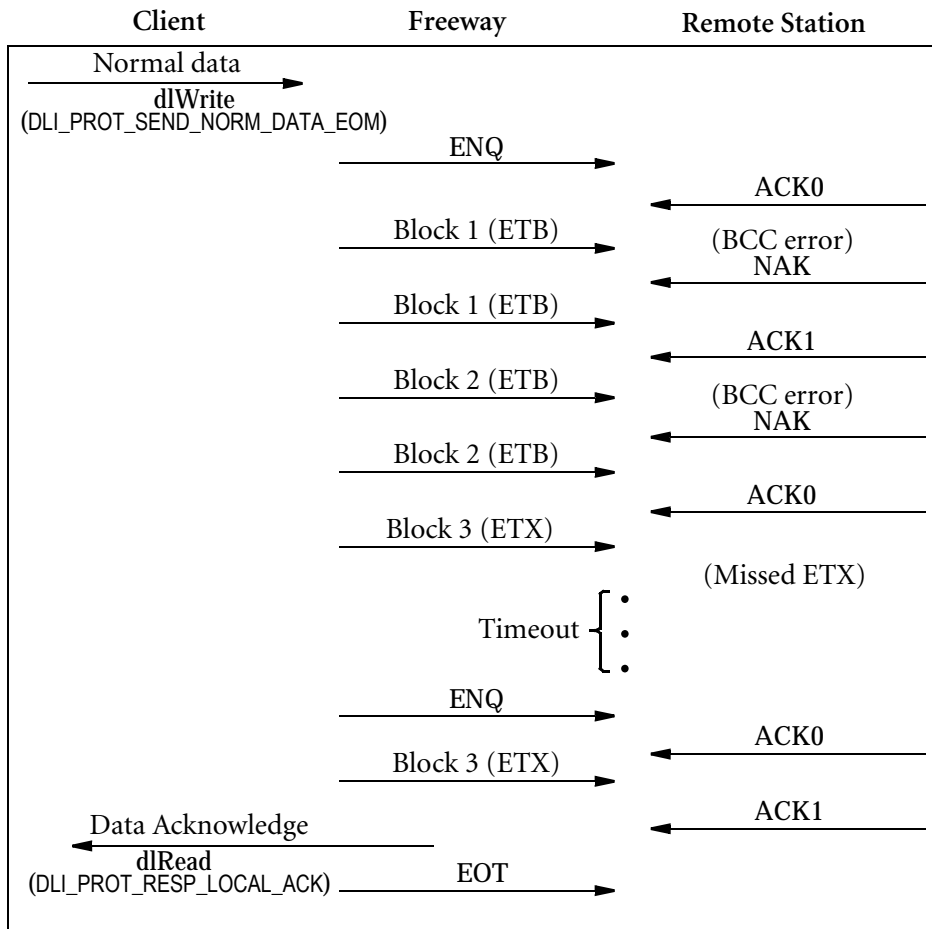


Figure B–9: Recoverable Error Sequence

B.1.8 Unrecoverable Errors In Transmission

When an unrecoverable transmission error occurs, the BSC 2780/3780 software discards all messages in the transmit queue. A data acknowledgment containing the appropriate error code in the dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus field is returned for each discarded message. [Figure B–10](#) and [Figure B–11](#) show examples of unrecoverable error handling.

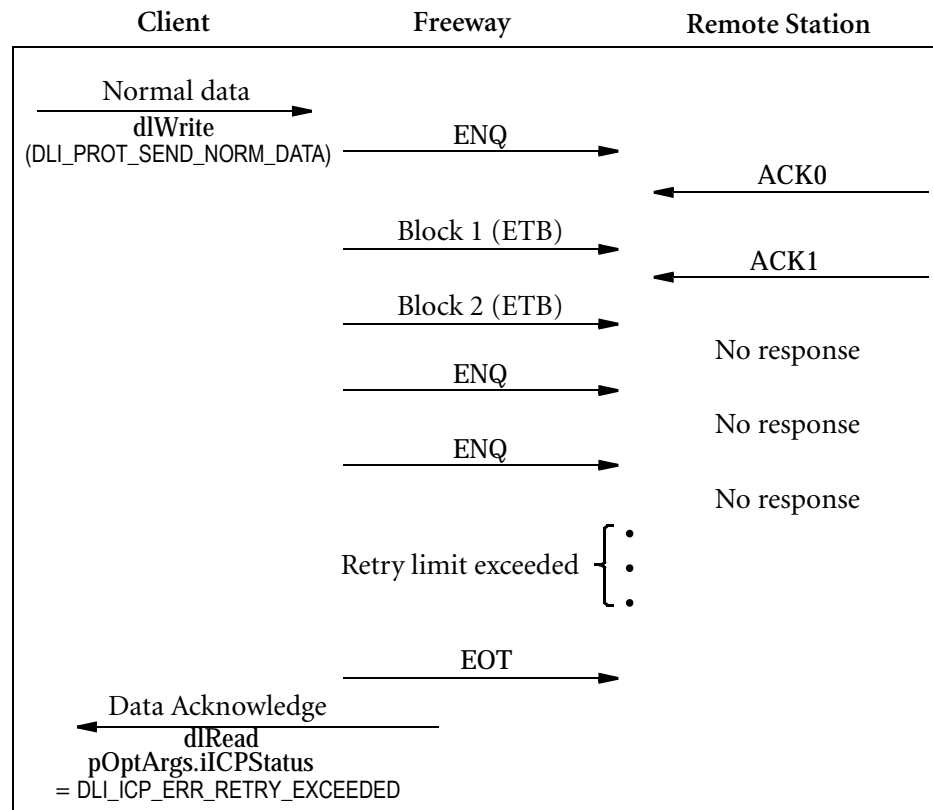


Figure B–10: No Response from the Remote Station

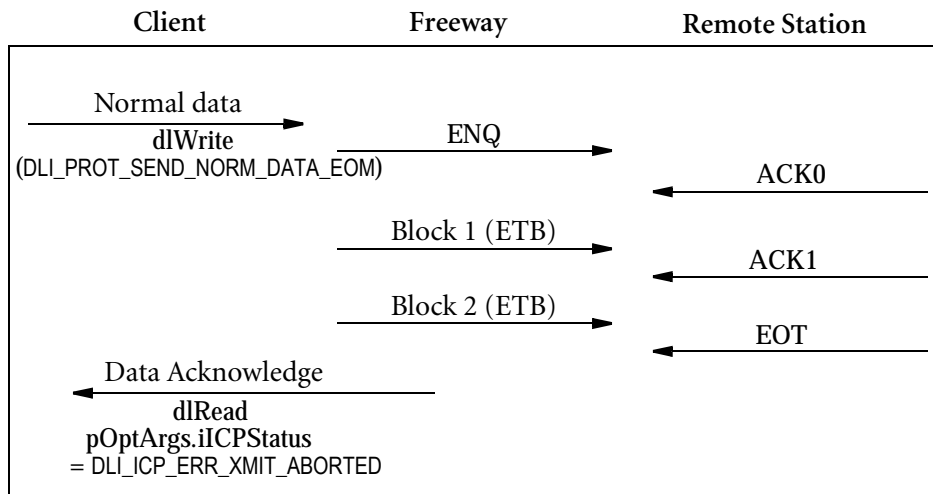


Figure B-11: Transmission Aborted by the Remote Station

B.1.9 Normal Link Stop

The client can stop a link at any time by issuing a Stop Link command ([Section 5.4.1.6 on page 122](#)), which disables the transmitter and the receiver and returns any data buffers in use to the client.

A call to `dlClose` (described in the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide*) also stops the link, but terminates the session as well. This is the normal method to terminate a session at the end of a client application. The Stop Link command is useful for temporarily stopping the link without terminating the session (for example, to reconfigure the link using the Link Configuration command). The link is restarted again by issuing a Start Link command ([Section 5.4.1.5 on page 121](#)).

[Figure B–12](#) is an example of the link stop sequence.

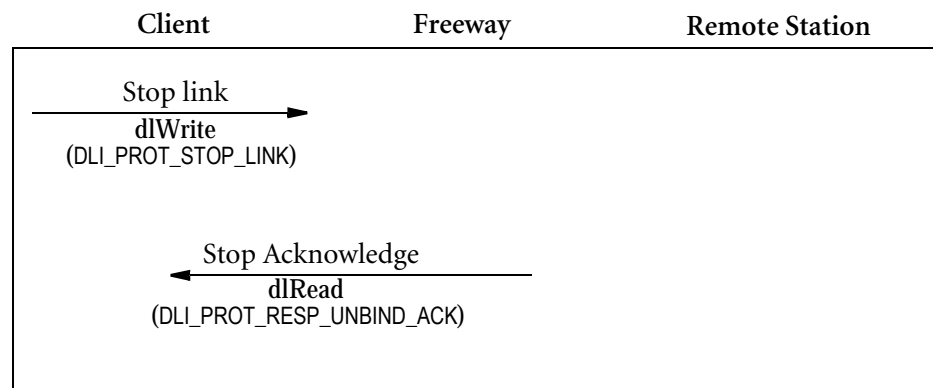


Figure B–12: Link Stop Sequence

Note

In blocking mode the stop acknowledge is implied by a successful Stop Link command.

B.2 DSR/DCD Up/Down Reporting

If the data set ready (DSR) or the data carrier detect (DCD) modem signal (depending on the setting of the modem control option, [Section 6.15 on page 168](#)) is lost while a link is active, BSC 2780/3780 suspends line operations for that link and notifies the client with the DLI_PROT_RESP_ERROR error report containing the DLI_ICP_ERR_DSR_DOWN error code. After reporting the DSR/DCD loss to the client, all message buffers that are queued in memory for transmission remain in the queued state. If the signal is not recovered, the BSC 2780/3780 software returns the queued message buffers to the client when the client closes the session with `dlClose` or issues a Flush Queue command ([Section 5.4.1.12 on page 130](#)).

When the DSR/DCD signal returns, BSC sends the client the DLI_PROT_RESP_ERROR error report containing the DLI_ICP_ERR_DSR_UP information code, and normal line operation resumes.

DSR/DCD up/down reporting is disabled when the modem control option is set to HDX-2 or FDX-2.

B.3 Freeway/Line Interface

Freeway communicates to remote devices through serial connectors. The ports can be connected to standard modem cables.

B.4 Modem Control Lines

[Table B-1](#) lists the EIA-232 modem control lines used by the BSC software.

B.5 Clock Signals

The BSC communication interface is designed to use either externally or internally generated clock signals. Clocking is selected through the clock source option ([Section 6.2 on page 159](#)). The BSC software always uses receive clocking provided by the receive

Table B–1: EIA-232 Modem Control Lines

Signal	Pin	Direction	Description
RTS	4	Output	For half-duplex, RTS is turned on just before transmission is started and turned off when transmission is complete.
CTS	5	Input	CTS is checked after RTS is turned on but prior to transmit. If CTS is on at this point, transmit is started and further changes in the CTS pin are ignored until the next block is ready to be transmitted. If CTS is off at this point, transmission is delayed until the CTS pin is turned on.
DSR	6	Input	DSR is monitored by the BSC software and its status is reported in the link status report.
DCD	8	Input	DCD is monitored by the BSC software, and its status is reported in the link status report.
DTR	20	Output	DTR is turned on when the link is started and turned off when the link is stopped.

data source. Under external clocking, BSC receives its transmit clocks from the remote computer. Under internal clocking, the transmit clock is internally generated and also output to the remote computer. For internal clocking on the Freeway 2000/4000, the hardware clock jumper for each link must be set as described in the *Freeway ICP6000R/ICP6000X Hardware Description* manual. If you need to set internal clocking, call the Protogate customer support number given in the *Preface*. For the Freeway 1000, refer to the *ICP2424 Hardware Description and Theory of Operation*.

[Table B–2](#) defines the EIA-232 clock signals used by the BSC software.

B.6 Idle Line Condition

When no data is being transmitted on a full-duplex circuit, the transmit line is held in a marking condition (all one-bits are transmitted).

Table B–2: EIA-232 Clock Signals

Signal	Pin	Direction	Description
XMT CLK	15	Input	External clocking: transmit clock Internal clocking: not used
RCV CLK	17	Input	External clocking: receive clock Internal clocking: receive clock
EXT CLK	24	Output	External clocking: not used Internal clocking: server-generated Clock signal to be connected to the XMT CLK of the local interface and the RCV CLK pin of the remote interface.

ASCII Translation Tables

The BSC software contains two ASCII/EBCDIC translation tables. Both tables may be modified using software commands ([Section 3.4.1.1 on page 57](#) and [Section 5.4.1.1 on page 118](#)). [Table C–1](#) through [Table C–4](#) show the contents of the translation tables as they would appear immediately after the communications server download.

Table C–1: ASCII to EBCDIC Translation Table 1

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0	00	00	02	03	00	00	2E	2F	16	05	25	0B	0C	0D	0E	0F
1	00	11	12	13	3C	3D	00	00	18	19	3F	27	1C	1D	1E	1F
2	40	4F	7F	7B	5B	6C	50	7D	4D	5D	5C	4E	6B	60	4B	61
3	F0	F1	F2	F3	F4	F5	F6	F7	F8	F9	7A	5E	4C	7E	6E	6F
4	7C	C1	C2	C3	C4	C5	C6	C7	C8	C9	D1	D2	D3	D4	D5	D6
5	D7	D8	D9	E2	E3	E4	E5	E6	E7	E8	E9	4A	E0	5A	5F	6D
6	79	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89	91	92	93	94	95	96
7	97	98	99	A2	A3	A4	A5	A6	A7	A8	A9	C0	6A	D0	A1	07
8	20	21	22	23	24	15	06	17	28	29	2A	2B	2C	09	0A	1B
9	30	31	1A	33	34	35	36	08	38	39	3A	3B	04	14	3E	E1
A	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	51	52	53	54	55	56	57
B	58	59	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71	72	73	74	75
C	76	77	78	80	8A	8B	8C	8D	8E	8F	90	9A	9B	9C	9D	9E
D	9F	A0	AA	AB	AC	AD	AE	AF	B0	B1	B2	B3	B4	B5	B6	B7
E	B8	B9	BA	BB	BC	BD	BE	BF	CA	CB	CC	CD	CE	CF	DA	DB
F	DC	DD	DE	DF	EA	EB	EC	ED	EE	EF	FA	FB	FC	FD	FE	FF
Example: ASCII character 1B translates to EBCDIC character 27.																

Table C–2: EBCDIC to ASCII Translation Table 1

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0	00	01	02	03	9C	09	86	7F	97	8D	8E	0B	0C	0D	0E	0F
1	10	11	12	13	9D	85	08	87	18	19	92	8F	1C	1D	1E	1F
2	80	81	82	83	84	0A	17	1B	88	89	8A	8B	8C	05	06	07
3	90	91	16	93	94	95	96	04	98	99	9A	9B	14	15	9E	1A
4	20	A0	A1	A2	A3	A4	A5	A6	A7	A8	5B	2E	3C	28	2B	21
5	26	A9	AA	AB	EC	AD	AE	AF	B0	B1	5D	24	2A	29	3B	5E
6	2D	2F	B2	B3	B4	B5	B6	B7	B8	B9	7C	2C	25	5F	3E	3F
7	BA	BB	BC	BD	BE	BF	C0	C1	C2	60	3A	23	40	27	3D	22
8	C3	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	C4	C5	C6	C7	C8	C9
9	CA	6A	6B	6C	6D	6E	6F	70	71	72	CB	CC	CD	CE	CF	D0
A	D1	7E	73	74	75	76	77	78	79	7A	D2	D3	D4	D5	D6	D7
B	D8	D9	DA	DB	DC	DD	DE	DF	E0	E1	E2	E3	E4	E5	E6	E7
C	7B	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	E8	E9	EA	EB	EC	ED
D	7D	4A	4B	4C	4D	4E	4F	50	51	52	EE	EF	F0	F1	F2	F3
E	5C	9F	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	5A	F4	F5	F6	F7	F8	F9
F	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	FA	FB	FC	FD	FE	FF
Example: EBCDIC character 26 translates to ASCII character 17.																

Table C-3: ASCII to EBCDIC Translation Table 2

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0	00	00	02	00	00	00	2E	2F	16	05	25	0B	0C	0D	0E	0F
1	00	11	12	13	3C	3D	00	00	18	19	3F	27	22	00	1E	1F
2	40	5A	7F	7B	5B	6C	50	7D	4D	5D	5C	4E	6B	60	4B	61
3	F0	F1	F2	F3	F4	F5	F6	F7	F8	F9	7A	5E	4C	7E	6E	6F
4	7C	C1	C2	C3	C4	C5	C6	C7	C8	C9	D1	D2	D3	D4	D5	D6
5	D7	D8	D9	E2	E3	E4	E5	E6	E7	E8	E9	4A	E0	6A	5F	6D
6	79	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89	91	92	93	94	95	96
7	97	98	99	A2	A3	A4	A5	A6	A7	A8	A9	C0	4F	D0	A1	07
8	00	00	00	00	00	00	2E	2F	16	40	25	0B	0C	0D	0E	0F
9	00	11	12	13	3C	3D	00	00	18	19	3F	27	22	00	35	00
A	40	5A	7F	7B	5B	6C	50	7D	4D	5D	5C	4E	6B	60	4B	61
B	F0	F1	F2	F3	F4	F5	F6	F7	F8	F9	7A	5E	4C	7E	6E	6F
C	7C	C1	C2	C3	C4	C5	C6	C7	C8	C9	D1	D2	D3	D4	D5	D6
D	D7	D8	D9	E2	E3	E4	E5	E6	E7	E8	E9	4A	E0	5F	4F	6D
E	79	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89	91	92	93	94	95	96
F	97	98	99	A2	A3	A4	A5	A6	A7	A8	A9	C0	6A	D0	A1	07
Example: ASCII character A1 translates to EBCDIC character 5A.																

Table C–4: EBCDIC to ASCII Translation Table 2

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0	00	01	02	03	00	09	00	7F	00	00	00	0B	0C	0D	0E	0F
1	10	11	12	13	00	00	08	00	18	19	00	00	1C	1D	1E	1F
2	00	00	00	00	00	0A	17	1B	00	00	00	00	00	05	06	07
3	00	00	16	00	00	00	00	04	00	00	00	00	14	15	00	1A
4	20	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	5B	2E	3C	28	2B	7C
5	26	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	21	24	2A	29	3B	5E
6	2D	2F	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	5D	2C	25	5F	3E	3F
7	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	60	3A	23	40	27	3D	22
8	00	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	00	00	00	00	00	00
9	00	6A	6B	6C	6D	6E	6F	70	71	72	00	00	00	00	00	00
A	00	7E	73	74	75	76	77	78	79	7A	00	00	00	00	00	00
B	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
C	7B	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	00	00	00	00	00	00
D	7D	4A	4B	4C	4D	4E	4F	50	51	52	00	00	00	00	00	00
E	5C	00	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	5A	00	00	00	00	00	00
F	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	00	00	00	00	00	7F
Example: EBCDIC character 7A translates to ASCII character 3A.																

Error Codes

There are several methods used by the DLI and BSC software to report errors ([Table D-1](#) lists the BSC errors).

1. The error code can be returned directly by the DLI function call. Typical errors are those described in the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide*.
2. The BSC errors listed in [Table D-1](#) can be returned in the global variable `iICPStatus`. The DLI constant definitions are in the file `dlicperr.h`.
3. The BSC errors listed in [Table D-1](#) can also be returned in the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field of the response to a `dlWrite` request. The DLI sets the `dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field to the same value as the `dlWrite` request that caused the error. An example of this type of error is the `DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE` invalid mode error.
4. The BSC error can be reported in an error report response to a `dlRead` request. The returned `dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field is set to `DLI_PROT_RESP_ERROR`, and the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field is set to the actual error code. An example of this type of error is the `DLI_ICP_ERR_DSR_DOWN` error.
5. Under certain communication line conditions that cause queued transmission buffers to be discarded (such as losing the DSR signal while transmitting data), the BSC error can be reported in a data acknowledgment response to a `dlRead` request. In this case, the returned `dlRead pOptArgs.usProtCommand` field is set to `DLI_PROT_RESP_LOCAL_ACK`, and the `dlRead pOptArgs.iICPStatus` field is set to the actual error code. An example of this type of error is the `DLI_ICP_ERR_XMIT_TIMEOUT` transmit timeout error.

Table D–1: BSC Error Codes

Code	DLI Constant Name	Meaning
0	DLI_ICP_ERR_NO_ERR	A data block has been successfully transmitted or received on the line or a command has been successfully executed.
1	DLI_ONE_BLOCK	One block of data has been sent.
–103 (2 uses)	DLI_ICP_ERR_NO_CLIENT	The protocol software has the maximum number of clients registered for that link.
–103	DLI_ICP_ERR_DEVICE_UNAVAIL	The device is unavailable or is mechanically disabled (such as printer out of paper).
–104	DLI_ICP_ERR_MASTER_IN_USE	The requested session (access mode) is already in use.
–105	DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_CMD	The command from the client program is not a legal value.
–106	DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_BCC	The received block check character does not match the BCC value calculated by the protocol software.
–108	DLI_ICP_ERR_QFULL	The ICP message buffer queue limit has been reached. This error usually occurs when the client fails to make dlRead requests frequently enough to read incoming messages.
–109	DLI_ICP_ERR_XMIT_TIMEOUT	The protocol software was unable to transmit the data. This error occurs when some or all of the modem signals are not present.
–110	DLI_ICP_ERR_DSR_UP	The protocol software has received a positive data set ready (DSR) signal from the remote station.
–111	DLI_ICP_ERR_DSR_DOWN	The data set ready (DSR) signal from the remote station was lost. All polling and data transfer operations are stopped.
–112	DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_PARITY	The protocol software has detected a parity error or errors.
–113	DLI_ICP_ERR_RCV_OVERFLOW	The protocol software did not process a character before the next character was received. This can be caused by high data rates on several of the links.
–114	DLI_ICP_ERR_BUF_OVERFLOW	A message larger than the transmission/receive buffer was received. Some data was lost.
–115	DLI_ICP_ERR_BUF_TOO_SMALL	The ICP message buffer size is smaller than the buffer received from the client.
–117	DLI_ICP_ERR_LINK_ACTIVE	The link is already started.

Table D-1: BSC Error Codes (*Cont'd*)

Code	DLI Constant Name	Meaning
-118	DLI_ICP_ERR_LINK_INACTIVE	The link is stopped.
-119	DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_SESSID	If this error occurs, please call Protogate.
-121	DLI_ICP_ERR_NO_SESSION	No more clients are available on this ICP. This error should never occur; if it does, please call Protogate.
-122	DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_PARMs	The parameter value(s) used for the function call are illegal.
-123	DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE	The function request is not available for the requested access mode.
-124	DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_OP	The device is not owned; no legal operations.
-125	DLI_ICP_ERR_NO_CTRL_SESS	No non- <i>Control</i> session is registered for this link. The operation is not allowed.
-126	DLI_ICP_ERR_XMIT_ABORTED	The remote computer (or BSC) sent EOT. The message is discarded.
-127	DLI_ICP_ERR_RETRY_EXCEEDED	The retry limit was exceeded while attempting to transmit a data block or select a tributary station. The message is discarded.
-128	DLI_ICP_ERR_RVI_GOOD_RECV	An RVI was received after the last (ETX) block of a message was transmitted on the line. The message transmission was successful. This is an informational message only.
-129	DLI_ICP_ERR_RVI_RCV_ABORTED	An RVI was received after an intermediate (ETB) block of a message was transmitted on the line. The message is discarded.
-130	DLI_ICP_ERR_STATION_UP	A 3270 remote station has changed status from a logically inactive state to an active one. For control stations, this means that a remote tributary station has responded to a general poll or select sequence. The number of the remote tributary station is placed in the CU byte of the pOptArgs.usCircuitID field of the error report. For tributary stations, this means that a poll or select sequence has been received from the remote control station for the control unit number specified in the CU byte of the pOptArgs.usCircuitID field of the error report.

Table D–1: BSC Error Codes (*Cont'd*)

Code	DLI Constant Name	Meaning
–131	DLI_ICP_ERR_STATION_DOWN	A 3270 remote station has changed status from a logically active state to an inactive one. For control stations, this means that a remote tributary station failed to answer a general poll sequence within a required number of retries. The control unit number of the tributary station is placed in the CU byte of the pOptArgs.usCircuitID field of the error report. For tributary stations, this means that the remote control station failed to issue a poll or select sequence within the timeout period specified by the interpoll delay option.
–132	DLI_ICP_ERR_LINE_UP	A transmission/reception has occurred on a link that was previous marked down.
–133	DLI_ICP_ERR_USER_ABORT	A transmission/reception was aborted after the client issued a Stop Link command.
–134	DLI_ICP_ERR_NO_CU	No such CU in poll list.
–135	DLI_ICP_ERR_MODE_NOT_SAFE	The client issues a Send EOT command when BSC is not expecting one, or an EOT is received from the remote station (forward abort) before the client sends the message acceptance/rejection.
–136	DLI_ICP_ERR_MODE_NOT_MASTER	Request command/function is available only to a <i>Manager</i> session.
–137	DLI_ICP_ERR_DEVICE_BUSY	Fatal modem error; device is busy.
–138	DLI_ICP_ERR_BUSY_OUT	Busy-out is not supported.
–139	DLI_ICP_ERR_NO_ANSWER	No answer.
–140	DLI_ICP_ERR_INVALID_RESP	Unidentified modem response.
–141	DLI_ICP_ERR_NO_DIALTONE	No dial tone.
–142	DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODEM_RESP	Invalid command or configuration.
–143	DLI_ICP_ERR_INCOMING_CALL	Incoming call detected.
–144	DLI_ICP_ERR_INVALID_PROTOCOL	Unknown protocol type.
–145	DLI_ICP_ERR_INBUF_OVERFLOW	Input buffer overflow
–146	DLI_ICP_ERR_OUTBUF_OVERFLOW	Output buffer overflow
–147	DLI_ICP_ERR_DISC_TIMEOUT	Disconnect timeout error
–151	DLI_ICP_ERR_BCC_PARITY	BCC and parity errors were detected

BSC Loopback Test Program

Note

In this chapter, the DLI API interface applies to both a Freeway server or an embedded ICP using DLITE. For the embedded ICP, also refer to the user's guide for your ICP and operating system (for example, the *ICP2432 User's Guide for Windows NT (DLITE Interface)*).

E.1 Loopback Test Programs

The BSC loopback test programs and test directories are listed in [Table E-1](#) and [Table E-2](#), according to operating system (UNIX, VMS, or Windows NT). This section provides a summary of the steps required to run the loopback test; see the *Loopback Test Procedures* document for the details and an example output (this information was previously in the *Freeway Server User's Guide*). The loopback program uses non-blocking I/O, meaning that the `asyncIO` DLI configuration parameter (described in the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide*) must be set to “yes” (the default is “no” for blocking I/O).

Table E-1: BSC 3270 Loopback Test Programs and Directories

Operating System	Program	BSC 3270 Test Directory
UNIX	<code>bsc3270alp.c</code>	<code>usr/local/freeway/client/test/bsc3270</code>
VMS	<code>BSC3270ALP.C</code>	<code>SYS\$SYSDEVICE:[FREEWAY.CLIENT.TEST.BSC3270]</code>
Windows NT	<code>bsc3270alp.c</code>	<code>c:\freeway\client\test\bsc3270</code>

Table E-2: BSC 3780 Loopback Test Programs and Directories

Operating System	Program	BSC 3780 Test Directory
UNIX	bsc3780alp.c	usr/local/freeway/client/test/bsc3780
VMS	BSC3780ALP.C	SYS\$SYSDEVICE:[FREEWAY.CLIENT.TEST.BSC3780]
Windows NT	bsc3780alp.c	c:\freeway\client\test\bsc3780

To run the test program, perform the following steps:

1. Make sure the server TSI configuration parameter is correctly defined in the TSI text configuration file for each TSI connection definition. Refer to the *Freeway Transport Subsystem Interface Reference Guide*.
2. Make any required changes to the DLI text configuration file for DLI session parameters or ICP link parameters whose values differ from the defaults (for example, the elecInterface parameter for a Freeway 1000). Refer to the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide* and to [Chapter 7](#) of this guide.
3. Be sure you are in the correct directory.

For UNIX: `cd /usr/local/freeway/client/test/bsc3780`

or: `cd /usr/local/freeway/client/test/bsc3270`

For VMS: `SET DEF SYS$SYSDEVICE:[FREEWAY.CLIENT.TEST.BSC3780]`

or: `SET DEF SYS$SYSDEVICE:[FREEWAY.CLIENT.TEST.BSC3270]`

For NT: `cd c:\freeway\client\test\bsc3780`

or: `cd c:\freeway\client\test\bsc3270`

4. Run the make file provided in the test directory.

For UNIX: `make -f makefile.<op-sys> all`

where `<op-sys>` is the operating system:

`sun` (for a Sun system)

hpux (for an HP/UX system)
 sol (for a Solaris system)
 aix (for an RS6000/AIX system)
 osf/1 (for an OSF1 system)

UNIX example: `make -f makefile.sol all`

For VMS: `@MAKEVMS "" <tcp-sys>`

where `<tcp-sys>` is the TCP/IP package:

MULTINET (for a Multinet system)
 TCPWARE (for TCPware system)
 UCX (for a UCX system)

VMS example: `@MAKEVMS "" UCX`

For NT: `nmake -f makefile.<op-sys> all`

where `<op-sys>` is the operating system:

ant (for Alpha NT)
 int (for Intel NT)

NT example: `nmake -f makefile.ant all`

The make file automatically performs the following:

- In VMS systems only, creates the foreign commands used for the `dlcfg` and `tsicfg` configuration preprocessor programs. (This is not necessary for UNIX and NT systems.)
- Runs the `dlcfg` and `tsicfg` configuration preprocessor programs. These programs process the appropriate DLI and TSI text configuration files to create the DLI and TSI binary configuration files. The text configuration files provided for non-blocking I/O are:

DLI:	bsc3270aldcfg
	bsc3780aldcfg
TSI:	bsc3270altcfg
	bsc3780altcfg

The resulting binary configuration files have the same names with a .bin extension. For example, bsc3270aldcfg.bin.

- Copies the DLI and TSI binary configuration files to the appropriate bin directory.

UNIX example: freeway/client/op-sys/bin

VMS example: [FREEWAY.CLIENT.<vms_platform>_tcp-sys.BIN]

where <vms_platform> is VAX or AXP

for example, [FREEWAY.CLIENT.VAX_UCX.BIN]

NT example: freeway\client\op-sys\bin

- Compiles and links the loopback test program (for example, bsc3270alp.c) and copies it to the same bin directory.
5. Boot the Freeway server and load the BSC protocol software onto the ICP (refer to the *Freeway Server User's Guide*).
 6. Connect two ICP links with loopback cables (refer to the *Freeway Server User's Guide* appendix).
 7. Execute the test program from the directory where the *binary* DLI and TSI configuration files reside (that resulted from Step 4 above).

In Step 4 above, the make file runs the dlicfg and tsicfg preprocessor programs *and* compiles and links the test program. If you already compiled and linked the test program, you can avoid recompiling and relinking it by running dlicfg and tsicfg yourself instead of running the make file. However, note the following if you do.

In a UNIX system, if you run dlicfg and tsicfg instead of running the make file, you must manually move the resulting DLI and TSI binary configuration files to the appropriate freeway/client/op-sys/bin directory where op-sys indicates the operating system: sunos, hpux, solaris, rs_aix, osf1.

UNIX example: `mv bsc3270aldcfg.bin /usr/local/freeway/client/hpux/bin`
`mv bsc3270altcfg.bin /usr/local/freeway/client/hpux/bin`

In a VMS system, if you run `dlcfg` and `tsicfg` instead of running the make file, you must do the following:

- *Before* you run `dlcfg` and `tsicfg`, run the `makefc.com` command file to create the foreign commands used for `dlcfg` and `tsicfg`.

`@MAKEFC <tcp-sys>`

where `<tcp-sys>` is your TCP/IP package:

MULTINET (for a Multinet system)

TCPWARE (for TCPware system)

UCX (for a UCX system)

VMS example: `@MAKEFC UCX`

- *After* you run `dlcfg` and `tsicfg`, run the `move.com` command file which moves the DLI and TSI binary configuration files to the `bin` directory for your TCP/IP package.

`@MOVE filename <tcp-sys>`

where *filename* is the name of the binary configuration file and `<tcp-sys>` is your TCP/IP package as shown above.

VMS example: `@MOVE BSC3780ALDCFG.BIN UCX`

In a Windows NT system, if you run `dlcfg` and `tsicfg` instead of running the make file, you must manually move the resulting DLI and TSI binary configuration files to the appropriate `freeway\client\op-sys\bin` directory where *op-sys* indicates the operating system: `ant` or `int`. For example, `freeway\client\ant\bin`.

NT example: `copy bsc3270aldcfg.bin \freeway\client\ant\bin`
`copy bsc3270altcfg.bin \freeway\client\ant\bin`

BSC Detailed Command and Response Formats

This appendix is intended as an aid to programmers writing an application program under one of the following conditions:

1. If you are writing to Protogate's data link interface (DLI) using *Raw* operation, also refer to the *Freeway Data Link Interface Reference Guide*. If you are using the embedded DLITE interface, also refer to the user's guide for your particular ICP and operating system; for example, the *ICP2432 User's Guide for Windows NT (DLITE Interface)*.
2. If you are writing a non-DLI application using a Protogate driver interface, also refer to the user's guide for your particular ICP and operating system; for example, the *ICP2432 User's Guide for Windows NT (DLITE Interface)*.
3. If you are writing a non-DLI application using a socket interface, also refer to the *Freeway Client-Server Interface Control Document*.

F.1 BSC Protocol Processing

F.1.1 Session Attach

The client application must process a `DLI_ICP_CMD_ATTACH` command and subsequent response for each node and link that is be accessed. The session ID (`usProtSessionID`) field in the Protocol Header must be saved and placed in every subsequent Protocol Header command message. See [Table F–2 on page 247](#).

F.1.2 Set Buffer Size

The client application must process a `DLI_PROT_SET_BUF_SIZE` command and subsequent response to the ICP to set the maximum buffer size of data that is transmitted and/or received on the protocol link. This command message should be sent at the completion of the first link attach, and before any other command messages are sent to the ICP. The `usICPCommand` field of the ICP Header is `DLI_ICP_CMD_WRITE`. See [Table F–6 on page 251](#).

F.1.3 Link Configuration

The client application must process a `DLI_PROT_CFG_LINK` command and subsequent response to the ICP to configure each link. The `usICPCommand` field of the ICP Header is `DLI_ICP_CMD_WRITE`. See [Table F–7 on page 252](#) and [Table F–9 on page 254](#).

F.1.4 Link Enabling (Bind)

The client application must process a `DLI_ICP_CMD_BIND` command and subsequent response to the ICP to enable a link for transfer or receipt of data. See [Table F–4 on page 249](#).

F.1.5 Data Transfer

The client application is now ready to process any data that is to be transmitted or received. To transmit data, the client must send data using one of the following protocol commands:

- `DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA`
- `DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA_EOM`
- `DLI_PROT_SEND_TRANS_DATA`
- `DLI_PROT_SEND_TRANS_DATA_EOM`
- `DLI_PROT_SEND_2780_DATA` (BSC 2780/3780 only)
- `DLI_PROT_SEND_2780_DATA_EOM` (BSC 2780/3780 only)

The `usICPCommand` field of the ICP Header is `DLI_ICP_CMD_WRITE`. See [Table F–11 on page 256](#).

The client application is normally implemented to allow asynchronous receipt of both the acknowledgment to these commands, which is `DLI_PROT_RESP_LOCAL_ACK` (see [Table F–11 on page 256](#)), and receipt of data received at the data link (see [Table F–12 on page 257](#)). For both messages, the `usICPCommand` field of the received ICP Header is `DLI_ICP_CMD_READ`.

There are other protocol commands (and subsequent responses) that can be sent to or received from the ICP (the general format is shown in [Table F–7 on page 252](#) and [Table F–9 on page 254](#)).

F.1.6 Link Disabling (Unbind)

When the client application is ready to terminate data transfer of a link, it processes a `DLI_ICP_CMD_UNBIND` command and subsequent response to the ICP to disable the specified link. See [Table F–5 on page 250](#).

F.1.7 Session Detach

When the client application is ready to terminate processing, it processes a `DLI_ICP_CMD_DETACH` command and subsequent response for each node and link that is be detached from session management. See [Table F–3 on page 248](#).

After a session and link have been detached, the same, or another client application is free to attach a session to the link. Without normal session detaches, any link that is attached on the ICP is not re-usable, and the ICP must be re-downloaded to make the link again available.

F.2 Command/Response Header Summary

[Table F–1](#) lists the commands and responses which are detailed in this appendix. The referenced tables show the required header field values for both the ICP Header and the Protocol Header.

For the complete list of BSC 3270 commands and responses, see [Table 3–4 on page 56](#) and [Table 3–10 on page 81](#). For the complete list of BSC 2780/3780 commands and responses, see [Table 5–4 on page 116](#) and [Table 5–12 on page 151](#).

Table F–1: Command/Response Codes

Command/Response Code	Reference Format Table
DLI_ICP_CMD_ATTACH	Table F–2 on page 247
DLI_ICP_CMD_DETACH	Table F–3 on page 248
DLI_ICP_CMD_BIND	Table F–4 on page 249
DLI_ICP_CMD_UNBIND	Table F–5 on page 250
DLI_PROT_SET_BUF_SIZE	Table F–6 on page 251
BSC 3270 General Commands & Responses	Table F–7 on page 252
DLI_PROT_CREATE_DEVICE	Table F–8 on page 253
DLI_PROT_CHANGE_STATUS	Table F–8 on page 253
BSC 2780/3780 General Commands & Responses	Table F–9 on page 254
DLI_PROT_SET_TRANS_TABLE	Table F–10 on page 255
BSC Data Transmit and Receive Commands & Responses: DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA_EOM DLI_PROT_SEND_TRANS_DATA DLI_PROT_SEND_TRANS_DATA_EOM DLI_PROT_SEND_2780_DATA DLI_PROT_SEND_2780_DATA_EOM DLI_PROT_RESP_LOCAL_ACK	Table F–11 on page 256 (for Data Transmit) Table F–12 on page 257 (for Data Receive)

Table F–2: DLI_ICP_CMD_ATTACH Command and Response

Header	Field	Command Value (Write)	Response Value (Read)
ICP_header	fill1	N/A	N/A
	fill2	N/A	N/A
	iICPSize	16	16
	usICPCommand	DLI_ICP_CMD_ATTACH	DLI_ICP_CMD_ATTACH
	iICPStatus	<i>See Note 1.</i>	<i>See Note 2.</i>
	usICPParms[0]	<i>See Note 3.</i>	<i>See Note 3.</i>
	usICPParms[1]	0	N/A
	usICPParms[2]	0	N/A
Prot_header	usProtCommand	DLI_ICP_CMD_ATTACH	DLI_ICP_CMD_ATTACH
	iProtModifier	<i>See Note 4.</i>	<i>See Note 2.</i>
	usProtLinkID	Link Number	Link Number
	usProtCircuitID	0	N/A
	usProtSessionID	0	<i>See Note 5.</i>
	fill3	N/A	N/A
	usProtXParms[0]	<i>See Note 6.</i>	N/A
	fill4	0	N/A

Notes:

1. Zero (0) for Big Endian clients (such as SunOS)
0x4000 for Little Endian clients (such as DEC)
2. DLI return status (See [Appendix D](#))
3. Node number that will be used on client driver read requests. See the appropriate user's guide for your operating system for a description of read nodes.
4. Session Access Mode (see [Section 2.2 on page 35](#) for BSC 3270 or [Section 2.4 on page 42](#) for BSC 3780)
5. This returned Session ID must be provided on all subsequent writes for this link/node (see *Note 3.*)
6. Protocol type: 4 = BSC 3270 or 5 = BSC 3780

Table F–3: DLI_ICP_CMD_DETACH Command and Response

Header	Field	Command Value (Write)	Response Value (Read)
ICP_header	fill1	N/A	N/A
	fill2	N/A	N/A
	iICPSize	16	16
	usICPCommand	DLI_ICP_CMD_DETACH	DLI_ICP_CMD_DETACH
	iICPStatus	<i>See Note 1.</i>	<i>See Note 2.</i>
	usICPParms[0]	0	N/A
	usICPParms[1]	0	N/A
	usICPParms[2]	0	N/A
Prot_header	usProtCommand	DLI_ICP_CMD_DETACH	DLI_ICP_CMD_DETACH
	iProtModifier	<i>See Note 3.</i>	<i>See Note 4.</i>
	usProtLinkID	Link Number	Link Number
	usProtCircuitID	0	N/A
	usProtSessionID	<i>See Note 5.</i>	<i>See Note 5.</i>
	fill3	0	N/A
	fill4	0	N/A
	fill5	0	N/A

Notes:

1. Zero (0) for Big Endian clients (such as SunOS)
0x4000 for Little Endian clients (such as DEC)
2. DLI return status (See [Appendix D](#))
3. Session Access Mode (see [Section 2.2 on page 35](#) for BSC 3270 or [Section 2.4 on page 42](#) for BSC 3780)
4. Protocol status (See [Appendix D](#))
5. The usProtSessionID that was returned on the DLI_ICP_CMD_ATTACH command

Table F-4: DLI_ICP_CMD_BIND Command and Response

Header	Field	Command Value (Write)	Response Value (Read)
ICP_header	fill1	N/A	N/A
	fill2	N/A	N/A
	iCPSize	16	16
	usICPCommand	DLI_ICP_CMD_BIND	DLI_ICP_CMD_BIND
	iCPStatus	<i>See Note 1.</i>	<i>See Note 2.</i>
	usICPParms[0]	0	N/A
	usICPParms[1]	0	N/A
	usICPParms[2]	0	N/A
Prot_header	usProtCommand	DLI_ICP_CMD_BIND	DLI_ICP_CMD_BIND
	iProtModifier	N/A	<i>See Note 3.</i>
	usProtLinkID	Link Number	Link Number
	usProtCircuitID	0	N/A
	usProtSessionID	<i>See Note 4.</i>	<i>See Note 4.</i>
	fill3	0	N/A
	fill4	0	N/A
	fill5	0	N/A

Notes:

1. Zero (0) for Big Endian clients (such as SunOS)
0x4000 for Little Endian clients (such as DEC)
2. DLI return status (See [Appendix D](#))
3. Protocol status (See [Appendix D](#))
4. The usProtSessionID that was returned on the DLI_ICP_CMD_ATTACH command

Table F–5: DLI_ICP_CMD_UNBIND Command and Response

Header	Field	Command Value (Write)	Response Value (Read)
ICP_header	fill1	N/A	N/A
	fill2	N/A	N/A
	iICPSize	16	16
	usICPCommand	DLI_ICP_CMD_UNBIND	DLI_ICP_CMD_UNBIND
	iICPStatus	<i>See Note 1.</i>	<i>See Note 2.</i>
	usICPParms[0]	0	N/A
	usICPParms[1]	0	N/A
	usICPParms[2]	0	N/A
Prot_header	usProtCommand	DLI_ICP_CMD_UNBIND	DLI_ICP_CMD_UNBIND
	iProtModifier	0	<i>See Note 3.</i>
	usProtLinkID	Link Number	Link Number
	usProtCircuitID	0	N/A
	usProtSessionID	<i>See Note 4.</i>	<i>See Note 4.</i>
	fill3	0	N/A
	fill4	0	N/A
	fill5	0	N/A

Notes:

1. Zero (0) for Big Endian clients (such as SunOS)
0x4000 for Little Endian clients (such as DEC)
2. DLI return status (See [Appendix D](#))
3. Protocol status (See [Appendix D](#))
4. The usProtSessionID that was returned on the DLI_ICP_CMD_ATTACH command

Table F–6: DLI_PROT_SET_BUF_SIZE Command and Response

Header	Field	Command Value (Write)	Response Value (Read)
ICP_header	fill1	0	N/A
	fill2	0	N/A
	iICPSize	18	18
	usICPCommand	DLI_ICP_CMD_WRITE	DLI_ICP_CMD_WRITE
	iICPStatus	<i>See Note 1.</i>	<i>See Note 2.</i>
	usICPParms[0]	0	N/A
	usICPParms[1]	0	N/A
	usICPParms[2]	0	N/A
Prot_header	usProtCommand	DLI_PROT_SET_BUF_SIZE	DLI_PROT_SET_BUF_SIZE
	iProtModifier	0	<i>See Note 3.</i>
	usProtLinkID	<i>See Note 4.</i>	N/A
	usProtCircuitID	0	N/A
	usProtSessionID	<i>See Note 5.</i>	<i>See Note 5.</i>
	fill3	0	N/A
	fill4	0	N/A
	fill5	0	N/A

Notes:

1. Zero (0) for Big Endian clients (such as SunOS)
0x4000 for Little Endian clients (such as DEC)
2. DLI return status (See [Appendix D](#))
3. Protocol status (See [Appendix D](#))
4. Only one DLI_PROT_SET_BUF_SIZE command can be sent as the first command after the first attach, and the usProtLinkID field must match the link specified on the attach.
5. The usProtSessionID that was returned on the DLI_ICP_CMD_ATTACH command

Table F-7: BSC 3270 General Commands and Responses

Header	Field	Command Value (Write)	Response Value (Read)
ICP_header	fill1	0	N/A
	fill2	0	N/A
	iICPSize	<i>See Note 1.</i>	<i>See Note 1.</i>
	usICPCommand	DLI_ICP_CMD_WRITE	DLI_ICP_CMD_WRITE
	iICPStatus	<i>See Note 2.</i>	<i>See Note 3.</i>
	usICPParms[0]	0	N/A
	usICPParms[1]	0	N/A
	usICPParms[2]	0	N/A
Prot_header	usProtCommand	<i>See Note 4.</i>	<i>See Note 4.</i>
	iProtModifier	0	<i>See Note 5.</i>
	usProtLinkID	Link Number (if required)	Link Number (if required)
	usProtCircuitID	<i>See Note 6.</i>	N/A
	usProtSessionID	<i>See Note 7.</i>	<i>See Note 7.</i>
	fill3	0	N/A
	fill4	0	N/A
	fill5	0	N/A

Notes:

1. 16 plus the size of the data area
2. Zero (0) for Big Endian clients (such as SunOS)
0x4000 for Little Endian clients (such as DEC)
3. DLI return status (See [Appendix D](#))
4. See [Table 3-4 on page 56](#) and [Table 3-10 on page 81](#)
5. Protocol status (See [Appendix D](#))
6. See the usProtCircuitID field requirements for each BSC write and read
7. The usProtSessionID that was returned on the DLI_ICP_CMD_ATTACH command

Table F–8: BSC 3270 Device Creation and Modification Commands and Responses

Header	Field	Command Value (Write)	Response Value (Read)
ICP_header	fill1	0	N/A
	fill2	0	N/A
	iCPSize	<i>See Note 1.</i>	<i>See Note 1.</i>
	usICPCommand	DLI_ICP_CMD_WRITE	DLI_ICP_CMD_WRITE
	iCPStatus	<i>See Note 2.</i>	<i>See Note 3.</i>
	usICPParms[0]	0	N/A
	usICPParms[1]	0	N/A
	usICPParms[2]	0	N/A
Prot_header	usProtCommand	DLI_PROT_CREATE_DEVICE or DLI_PROT_CHANGE_STATUS	DLI_PROT_CREATE_DEVICE or DLI_PROT_CHANGE_STATUS
	iProtModifier	<i>See Note 4.</i>	<i>See Note 5.</i>
	usProtLinkID	Link Number	Link Number
	usProtCircuitID	<i>See Note 6.</i>	N/A
	usProtSessionID	<i>See Note 7.</i>	<i>See Note 7.</i>
	fill3	0	N/A
	fill4	0	N/A
	fill5	0	N/A

Notes:

1. To create a device, iCPSize is set to 16 plus the number of devices to create. To change a device status, iCPSize = 16.
2. Zero (0) for Big Endian clients (such as SunOS)
0x4000 for Little Endian clients (such as DEC)
3. DLI return status (See [Appendix D](#))
4. Device status value
5. Protocol status (See [Appendix D](#))
6. See the usProtCircuitID field requirements for each BSC write and read
7. The usProtSessionID that was returned on the DLI_ICP_CMD_ATTACH command

Table F-9: BSC 2780/3780 General Commands and Responses

Header	Field	Command Value (Write)	Response Value (Read)
ICP_header	fill1	0	N/A
	fill2	0	N/A
	iICPSize	<i>See Note 1.</i>	<i>See Note 1.</i>
	usICPCommand	DLI_ICP_CMD_WRITE	DLI_ICP_CMD_WRITE
	iICPStatus	<i>See Note 2.</i>	<i>See Note 3.</i>
	usICPParms[0]	0	N/A
	usICPParms[1]	0	N/A
	usICPParms[2]	0	N/A
Prot_header	usProtCommand	<i>See Note 4.</i>	<i>See Note 4.</i>
	iProtModifier	0	<i>See Note 5.</i>
	usProtLinkID	Link Number (if required)	Link Number (if required)
	usProtCircuitID	0	N/A
	usProtSessionID	<i>See Note 6.</i>	<i>See Note 6.</i>
	fill3	0	N/A
	fill4	0	N/A
	fill5	0	N/A

Notes:

1. 16 plus the size of the data area
2. Zero (0) for Big Endian clients (such as SunOS)
0x4000 for Little Endian clients (such as DEC)
3. DLI return status (See [Appendix D](#))
4. See [Table 5-4 on page 116](#) and [Table 5-12 on page 151](#)
5. Protocol status (See [Appendix D](#))
6. The usProtSessionID that was returned on the DLI_ICP_CMD_ATTACH command

Table F–10: DLI_PROT_SET_TRANS_TABLE Command and Response

Header	Field	Command Value (Write)	Response Value (Read)
ICP_header	fill1	0	N/A
	fill2	0	N/A
	iICPSize	<i>See Note 1.</i>	N/A
	usICPCommand	DLI_ICP_CMD_WRITE	DLI_ICP_CMD_WRITE
	iICPStatus	<i>See Note 2.</i>	<i>See Note 3.</i>
	usICPParms[0]	0	N/A
	usICPParms[1]	0	N/A
	usICPParms[2]	0	N/A
Prot_header	usProtCommand	DLI_PROT_SET_TRANS_TABLE	DLI_PROT_SET_TRANS_TABLE
	iProtModifier	N/A	<i>See Note 4.</i>
	usProtLinkID	Link Number	Link Number
	usProtCircuitID	<i>See Note 5.</i>	N/A
	usProtSessionID	<i>See Note 6.</i>	<i>See Note 6.</i>
	fill3	0	N/A
	fill4	0	N/A
	fill5	0	N/A

Notes:

1. iICPSize = 528 (Protocol Header size (16) plus two 256-byte translation tables). The two translation tables follow the Protocol Header in the data area.
2. Zero (0) for Big Endian clients (such as SunOS)
0x4000 for Little Endian clients (such as DEC)
3. DLI return status (See [Appendix D](#))
4. Protocol status (See [Appendix D](#))
5. Translation table (1 or 2); see [Appendix C](#).
6. The usProtSessionID that was returned on the DLI_ICP_CMD_ATTACH command

Table F–11: BSC Transmit Data Commands and Response

Header	Field	Command Value (Write)	Response Value (Read)
ICP_header	fill1	0	N/A
	fill2	0	N/A
	iICPSize	<i>See Note 1.</i>	16
	usICPCommand	DLI_ICP_CMD_WRITE	DLI_ICP_CMD_WRITE
	iICPStatus	<i>See Note 2.</i>	<i>See Note 3.</i>
	usICPParms[0]	0	N/A
	usICPParms[1]	0	N/A
	usICPParms[2]	0	N/A
Prot_header	usProtCommand	DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA_EOM DLI_PROT_SEND_TRANS_DATA DLI_PROT_SEND_TRANS_DATA_EOM DLI_PROT_SEND_2780_DATA DLI_PROT_SEND_2780_DATA_EOM	DLI_PROT_RESP_LOCAL_ACK
	iProtModifier	0	<i>See Note 4.</i>
	usProtLinkID	Link Number	Link Number
	usProtCircuitID	<i>See Note 5.</i>	N/A
	usProtSessionID	<i>See Note 6.</i>	<i>See Note 6.</i>
	fill3	0	N/A
	fill4	0	N/A
	fill5	0	N/A

Notes:

1. 16 plus the size of the data area
2. Zero (0) for Big Endian clients (such as SunOS)
0x4000 for Little Endian clients (such as DEC)
3. DLI return status (See [Appendix D](#))
4. Protocol status (See [Appendix D](#)). A value of 1 is returned when a successful data transfer completes.
5. Protocol status (See [Appendix D](#))
6. The usProtSessionID that was returned on the DLI_ICP_CMD_ATTACH command

F.3 Response Header Format

Table F–12 describes the header information for the responses associated with the receipt of data.

Table F–12: BSC Receive Data Responses

Header	Field	Response Value (Read)
ICP_header	fill1	N/A
	fill2	N/A
	iICPSize	<i>See Note 1.</i>
	usICPCommand	DLI_ICP_CMD_READ
	iICPStatus	<i>See Note 2.</i>
	usICPParms[0]	N/A
	usICPParms[1]	N/A
	usICPParms[2]	N/A
Prot_header	usProtCommand	DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA_EOM DLI_PROT_SEND_TRANS_DATA DLI_PROT_SEND_TRANS_DATA_EOM DLI_PROT_SEND_2780_DATA DLI_PROT_SEND_2780_DATA_EOM
	iProtModifier	N/A
	usProtLinkID	Link Number
	fill3	N/A
	usProtSessionID	<i>See Note 3.</i>
	fill4	N/A
	fill5	N/A
	fill6	N/A

Notes:

1. The number of data bytes received plus the Protocol Header size (16)
2. DLI return status (See [Appendix D](#))
3. Protocol status (See [Appendix D](#))

Index

Numerics

3270 text addressing option 102

A

Aborted transmission 179

Access modes 35, 37, 42, 44

control 36, 43

manager 36, 43

read 36, 43

trace 43

Addressing

Internet 30

Alternating ACK control option 178

ASCII translation tables

see Translation tables

Attach session 243

header format 247

Audience 17

Autodial start command 131

AT support 133

SADL support 132

V.25bis support 133

B

Bid delay option 168

Binary configuration files 30, 184

Bit numbering 21

Block check character 38, 39, 92, 99, 164, 174, 175

Block checking option 99, 175

Blocking disabled option 97, 173

Blocking I/O 48, 108

call sequence 50, 110

BSC

DLI functions 45, 105

error codes 233

hardware description 32

options

see Configuration options

overview 31

protocol summary 33

software description 32

BSC product

BSC 2780/3780 features 41

BSC 3270 features 35

BSC 3270 poll list 76

Buffer report 71, 140

Buffer size command

header format 251

Byte order 247, 248, 249, 250, 251, 252, 253, 254, 255, 256

Byte ordering 21

C

Caution

data loss 51, 52, 111, 112

priority data 180

transparent 2780 records 154

Character set option 91, 148, 162

ASCII/CRC-16 163

ASCII/LRC-8 163

EBCDIC/CRC-16 163

Client operations 30

Client-server environment 29

establishing Internet address 30

Clock signals 75, 144, 208, 224, 226

Clock source option 89, 159

external 89, 160

internal 89, 160

Codes

- see* Command codes
 - see* Data codes
 - see* Error codes
 - see* Information codes
 - see* Response codes
- Command blocking option 98
- Command checking 200
- Command codes 56, 116
 - DLI_ICP_CMD_ATTACH
 - header format 247
 - DLI_ICP_CMD_BIND
 - header format 249
 - DLI_ICP_CMD_DETACH
 - header format 248
 - DLI_ICP_CMD_UNBIND
 - header format 250
 - DLI_PROT_CFG_LINK 59, 120
 - DLI_PROT_CHANGE_STATUS 69
 - DLI_PROT_CLR_STATISTICS 57, 118
 - DLI_PROT_CREATE_DEVICE 67
 - header format 253
 - DLI_PROT_FLUSH_QUEUE 130
 - DLI_PROT_GET_DEVICE_STATUS 76
 - DLI_PROT_MODEM_CFG 134
 - DLI_PROT_SAFE_STORE_ACK 64, 123
 - DLI_PROT_SEND_BIND 60, 121
 - DLI_PROT_SEND_DISC 125, 127
 - DLI_PROT_SEND_EOT 67, 125, 127
 - DLI_PROT_SEND_SIGNON 126, 212
 - DLI_PROT_SEND_UNBIND 61, 122
 - DLI_PROT_SET_BUF_SIZE 58, 119
 - header format 251
 - DLI_PROT_SET_POLL_LIST 62
 - DLI_PROT_SET_SPECIAL_POLL 66, 128
 - DLI_PROT_SET_TRANS_TABLE 57, 118
 - header format 255
 - DLI_PROT_START_AUTODIAL 131
 - DLI_PROT_START_LINK_TRACE 136
 - DLI_PROT_STOP_LINK_TRACE 136
 - transmit data
 - header format 256
- Command header summary 246
- Commands
 - foreign 184, 239
 - general header format 252, 254
 - header format 243
 - see* dlWrite
- Communications control procedures 209
- Configuration 46, 106
 - binary files 184
- DLI
 - alwaysQIO parameter 49, 109
 - asyncIO parameter 49, 109
 - cfgLink parameter 50, 58, 59, 110, 119, 120, 193, 210, 211
 - elecInterface parameter 238
 - enable parameter 50, 58, 59, 110, 119, 120, 193, 210, 211
 - example 189
 - localAck parameter 78, 80, 146, 150
 - main section 188
 - mode parameter 35, 42
 - protocol parameter 47, 107
 - protocol-specific sessions 188
 - sessions 188
 - summary 184
 - writeType parameter 48, 108, 115, 117, 147, 148, 190, 192
- DLI and TSI 30
- dlcfg program 183, 185
- overview 183
- TSI
 - maxBufSize parameter 58, 119
 - server parameter 238
 - summary 184
 - tsicfg program 184
- Configuration options 85, 86, 155, 156
 - 3270 text addressing 102
 - Alternating ACK control 178
 - block checking 99, 162, 175
 - character set 40, 91, 162
 - ASCII-CCITT-0 163
 - ASCII/CRC-16 163
 - ASCII/LRC-8 163
 - EBCDIC-CCITT-0 163
 - EBCDIC/CRC-16 163
 - clock source 89, 159
 - external 89, 160
 - internal 89, 160
 - conversational mode 94, 167

- data rate 88, 159
 - data translation 93, 165
 - disconnect timer length 181
 - DSR/DCD delay 103, 180
 - electrical interface 104, 182
 - EOM line control 176
 - interpoll delay 101
 - line turnaround delay 178
 - line type 182
 - message blocking 97, 170
 - BSC 2780/3780 records 174
 - command blocking 98
 - data blocking 98, 173
 - disabled 97, 173
 - modem control 95, 168
 - DCD signal 96, 170
 - DSR signal 96, 169
 - RTS signal 95, 169
 - modem type 182
 - number of leading SYN characters 90, 161
 - parity 91, 161, 162, 163
 - poll list delay 95
 - protocol 33, 38, 39, 90, 161
 - queue limit 100, 175
 - read session 101, 177
 - reply timer length 90, 160
 - retry limit 94, 167
 - RVI handling 179, 218
 - safe store 96, 170
 - space compression 40, 166
 - station ID 97
 - station priority 93, 166
 - table for using dlicfg 190, 191
 - transmission block size 35, 41, 92, 154, 164
 - TTD/WACK 178
 - TTD/WACK limit 181
 - wait for bid delay 168
 - Configuration report 72, 141
 - Configure link command 59, 120, 188
 - Control access mode 36, 43
 - Control characters 35, 38, 39, 40, 92, 149, 164, 217
 - trace data 137, 139
 - Control procedures
 - see* Communication control procedures
 - see* Line control procedures
 - Control station
 - see* Station
 - Control unit address 193, 194
 - Control unit number 34, 62, 66, 97, 102, 195
 - Conversational mode option 94, 167
 - CTS signal 96, 132, 169, 207, 225
 - Customer support 23
- D**
- Data
 - exchanging with remote application 31
 - receive
 - header format 257
 - receive normal data 83
 - example 216
 - receive transparent data 83
 - send normal data 79, 147
 - example 217
 - send transparent data 79, 147
 - transmit
 - header format 256
 - Data acknowledgment 83, 154
 - see* Response codes
 - Data blocking option 98, 173
 - Data codes 56, 117
 - DLI_PROT_LINK_TRACE_DATA 136
 - DLI_PROT_SEND_2780_DATA 148, 153
 - DLI_PROT_SEND_2780_DATA_EOM 148, 153
 - DLI_PROT_SEND_HDR_DATA 149
 - DLI_PROT_SEND_HDR_DATA_EOM 149
 - DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA 79, 83, 147, 149
 - DLI_PROT_SEND_NORM_DATA_EOM 79, 83, 147, 149
 - DLI_PROT_SEND_PRIOR_DATA 149
 - DLI_PROT_SEND_PRIOR_DATA_EOM 149
 - DLI_PROT_SEND_TRANS_DATA 79, 83, 147, 154
 - DLI_PROT_SEND_TRANS_DATA_EOM 79, 83, 148
 - Data link interface (DLI) 29, 30
 - Data message format 102

- Data rate option [88, 159](#)
- Data reception [153](#)
 - multiple messages [153](#)
- Data transfer [78, 146](#)
 - header data [149](#)
 - header format [244, 256, 257](#)
 - normal data [83, 149](#)
 - priority data [149](#)
 - transparent 2780 record [148](#)
 - transparent data [83, 154](#)
- Data translation option [93, 165](#)
- DCD signal [96, 121, 170, 207, 225](#)
- Detach session [245](#)
 - header format [248](#)
- Device address [194](#)
- Device emulation [103](#)
- Device selection [194](#)
- Device unit number [34, 66, 195](#)
- Direct memory access [29](#)
- Disable link (unbind) command [245](#)
 - header format [250](#)
- Disconnect timer length option [181](#)
- Disconnect, sending [125, 127, 128, 177](#)
- dlBufAlloc (*see also* Functions) [53](#)
- dlBufFree (*see also* Functions) [53](#)
- dlClose (*see also* Functions) [53](#)
- dlControl (*see also* Functions) [53](#)
- DLE EOT *see* Send disconnect
- dlerrno global variable [53, 113](#)
- DLI
 - configuration
 - msgBlkSize parameter [58, 119](#)
 - raw operation [243](#)
- DLI concepts [46, 106](#)
 - blocking vs non-blocking I/O [48, 108](#)
 - configuration [46, 106](#)
 - see also* Configuration, DLI
 - normal vs raw operation [47, 107](#)
- DLI functions [45, 105](#)
 - overview [52, 112](#)
 - see also* Functions
 - summary table [53, 113](#)
 - syntax synopsis [53, 113](#)
- DLI_ICP_CMD_ATTACH command
 - header format [247](#)
- DLI_ICP_CMD_BIND command
 - header format [249](#)
- DLI_ICP_CMD_DETACH command
 - header format [248](#)
- DLI_ICP_CMD_UNBIND command
 - header format [250](#)
- DLI_PROT_CREATE_DEVICE command
 - header format [253](#)
- DLI_PROT_SET_BUF_SIZE command
 - header format [251](#)
- DLI_PROT_SET_TRANS_TABLE command
 - header format [255](#)
- dlicfg preprocessor program [183](#)
- dlInit (*see also* Functions) [53](#)
- dlOpen (*see also* Functions) [53](#)
- dlpErrString (*see also* Functions) [53, 113](#)
- dlPoll (*see also* Functions) [53](#)
- dlRead (*see also* Functions) [53](#)
- dlTerm (*see also* Functions) [53](#)
- dlWrite categories
 - BSC 2780/3780 trace [136](#)
 - start trace [136](#)
 - stop trace [136](#)
- commands [57, 118](#)
 - autodial start [131](#)
 - AT support [133](#)
 - SADL support [132](#)
 - V.25bis support [133](#)
 - clear statistics [57, 118](#)
 - configure link [59, 120](#)
 - create virtual 3270 devices [67, 69](#)
 - flush queue [130](#)
 - modem configuration [134](#)
 - AT support [135](#)
 - SADL support [135](#)
 - V.25bis support [135](#)
 - poll line with no data [128](#)
 - safe store acknowledge [64, 123](#)
 - send disconnect [125, 127, 128, 177](#)
 - send EOT [64, 66, 67, 124, 125, 127, 177](#)
 - set ICP message buffer size [210](#)
 - set message buffer size [58, 119](#)
 - set poll list [62](#)
 - set translation table [57, 118](#)
 - signon [126, 212](#)

- specific poll 66
- start link 60, 121, 211
- stop link 61, 122, 223
- data transfer 78, 146
 - header data 149
 - normal data 79, 147, 217
 - priority data 149, 179, 218
 - transparent 2780 record 148
 - transparent data 79, 147, 154
- information 71, 140
 - BSC 3270 poll list 76
 - buffer report 71, 140
 - configuration report 72, 141
 - software version ID 75, 146
 - statistics report 72, 141
 - status report 73, 142
 - translation table 75, 144
 - virtual 3270 device status 76
- dlWrite (*see also* Functions) 53
- Documents
 - reference 19
- Download software 30
- DSR signal 61, 96, 121, 169, 206, 207, 224, 225
- DSR/DCD delay option 103, 180
- DSR/DCD up/down reporting 206, 224
- DTR signal 134, 135, 207, 225
- E
- EBCDIC translation tables
 - see* Translation tables
- elecInterface DLI parameter 238
- Electrical interface option 104, 182
- Embedded ICP
 - environment 30
 - overview 27
- Emulation
 - device 103
 - printer 102
- Enable link (bind) command 244
 - header format 249
- ENQ 94, 95, 167
- EOM line control option 176
- EOT
 - send command 67
- EOT, sending 64, 66, 67, 124, 127, 177
- Error codes
 - autodial 132
 - BSC table of codes 234
 - dlerrno global variable 53, 113
 - DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_BCC 99, 175
 - DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODE 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 65, 66, 67, 69, 70, 79, 118, 119, 121, 122, 123, 124, 125, 126, 128, 129, 130, 134, 147, 233
 - DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_MODEM_RESP 132, 133, 134
 - DLI_ICP_ERR_BAD_PARMS 57, 59, 60, 61, 62, 69, 70, 75, 77, 118, 120, 121, 122, 123, 144
 - DLI_ICP_ERR_BUF_OVERFLOW 92, 93, 164
 - DLI_ICP_ERR_BUSY_OUT 132, 135
 - DLI_ICP_ERR_DEVICE_BUSY 130, 132, 133, 134
 - DLI_ICP_ERR_DISC_TIMEOUT 181, 182
 - DLI_ICP_ERR_DSR_DOWN 103, 129, 132, 133, 134, 180, 206, 224, 233
 - DLI_ICP_ERR_DSR_UP 207, 224
 - DLI_ICP_ERR_INBUF_OVERFLOW 55, 116
 - DLI_ICP_ERR_INCOMING_CALL 132, 133
 - DLI_ICP_ERR_INVALID_RESP 132, 133
 - DLI_ICP_ERR_LINE_UP 196
 - DLI_ICP_ERR_LINK_ACTIVE 59, 60, 61, 120, 121, 122, 132, 134
 - DLI_ICP_ERR_LINK_INACTIVE 79, 126, 128, 130, 147
 - DLI_ICP_ERR_MODE_NOT_SAFE 65, 67, 124, 125, 126, 128, 130
 - DLI_ICP_ERR_NO_ANSWER 132, 133, 134
 - DLI_ICP_ERR_NO_CLIENT 129, 132, 195
 - DLI_ICP_ERR_NO_DIALTONE 132, 133, 134
 - DLI_ICP_ERR_OUTBUF_OVERFLOW 55, 116
 - DLI_ICP_ERR_QFULL 100, 136, 176
 - DLI_ICP_ERR_RETRY_EXCEEDED 90, 94, 95, 129, 160, 167, 181, 221
 - DLI_ICP_ERR_RVI_GOOD_RECV 180
 - DLI_ICP_ERR_RVI_RCV_ABORTED 179,

180
 DLI_ICP_ERR_STATION_DOWN 101, 194,
 195, 206
 DLI_ICP_ERR_STATION_UP 101, 195, 206
 DLI_ICP_ERR_USER_ABORT 129, 130
 DLI_ICP_ERR_XMIT_ABORTED 65, 125,
 126, 129, 222
 DLI_ICP_ERR_XMIT_TIMEOUT 79, 88,
 132, 147, 159, 196, 233
 iICPStatus global variable 233
 list of codes 233
 optArgs.usICPStatus field 233
 Error report
 DLI_PROT_RESP_ERROR 83, 154, 233
see also Error codes
 Errors
 recoverable 220
 unrecoverable 221
 Ethernet 28
 Event codes 145
 Example
 call sequence 50, 110
 DLI configuration file 189
 line sequences 209
 test programs 237
 F
 FDDI 28
 Features 35, 41
 product 28
 Files
 binary configuration 184
 example DLI configuration 189
 make file 238
 makefc.com 184, 241
 move.com 186, 241
 Flush queue command 130
 Foreign commands 184, 239
 Freeway
 client-server environment 29
 overview 25
 Freeway/line interface 207, 224
 Functions
 dlBufAlloc 53, 113
 dlBufFree 53, 113

dlClose 53, 113
 dlControl 53, 113
 dlInit 53, 113
 dlOpen 53, 113
 dlpErrString 53, 113
 dlPoll 53, 113
 dlRead 53, 80, 113, 150
 dlSyncSelect 53, 113
 dlTerm 53, 113
 dlWrite 53, 55, 113, 115
see also dlWrite categories

G

General poll 193

H

Hardware components 32

Headers

command and response format 243

response format 257

History of revisions 22

I

IBM

remote job entry 38

ICP message buffer

see Message buffer

Idle line condition 208, 225

iICPStatus global variable 233

Include file

dllicperr.h 233

Information codes 56, 116

DLI_PROT_GET_BUF_REPORT 71, 140

DLI_PROT_GET_BUF_REPORT 71, 140

DLI_PROT_GET_LINK_CFG 72, 141

DLI_PROT_GET_POLL_LIST 76

DLI_PROT_GET_SOFTWARE_VER 75, 146

DLI_PROT_GET_STATISTICS_REPORT 72
 , 141

DLI_PROT_GET_STATUS_REPORT 73, 142

DLI_PROT_GET_TRANS_TABLE 75, 144

Initialization

BSC 2780/3780 software 210

Internet addresses 30

Interpoll delay option 101

- I/O
 - blocking vs non-blocking 48, 108
- L
- LAN interface processor 26
- Line
 - turnaround 217
- Line bid
 - abort 166
 - BSC 2780/3780 poll line 128
 - BSC 2780/3780 signon 126, 212
 - contention 166
- Line control procedures 193
 - clock signals 208, 224
 - DSR/DCD up/down reporting 206, 224
 - Freeway/line interface 207, 224
 - idle line 208, 225
 - modem control lines 207, 224
- Line turnaround 149, 176, 177, 179
- Line turnaround delay option 178
- Line type option 182
- Line up/down reporting 196
- Link configuration options
 - see Configuration options
- Link disable (unbind) command
 - header format 250
- Link enable (bind) command
 - header format 249
- M
- Make file 238
- makefc.com file 184, 241
- Manager mode 36, 43
- Message blocking option 97, 170
- Message buffer size 35, 41
- Message buffer size set 58, 119
- Messages
 - data 102
 - status 102
- Modem
 - Black Box 132
 - Racal-Milgo 132
- Modem configuration command 134
 - AT support 135
 - SADL support 135
 - V.25bis support 135
- Modem control lines 207, 224
- Modem control option 95, 168
 - DCD signal 96, 170
 - DSR signal 96, 169
 - RTS signal 95, 169
- Modem type option 182
- Modes
 - DLI access 35, 37, 42
 - ICP access 44
 - normal 196
 - test 196
- move.com file 186, 241
- N
- NAK 65, 92, 100, 124, 164, 176
- Non-blocking I/O 48, 108
 - call sequence 51, 111
- Normal data 79, 115, 147, 217
- Normal mode 196
- Normal operation 47, 107, 115
- Number of leading SYN chars option 90, 161
- O
- Operating system
 - Protogate's real-time 27
- Operation
 - normal vs raw 47, 107
- Optional arguments
 - structure 54, 114
- Options
 - see Configuration options
- OS/Impact 32
- OS/Protogate 32
- Overview
 - BSC 31
 - configuration 183
 - DLI functions 52, 112
 - embedded ICP 27
 - Freeway server 25
 - product 25
- P
- Parity option 91, 161
- Poll

- general 193
 - specific 195
 - Poll line with no data command 128
 - Poll list delay option 95
 - Poll list set command 62
 - Printer emulation 102
 - Priority data 179, 218
 - Processor
 - Big Endian 247, 248, 249, 250, 251, 252, 253, 254, 255, 256
 - byte order 247, 248, 249, 250, 251, 252, 253, 254, 255, 256
 - Little Endian 247, 248, 249, 250, 251, 252, 253, 254, 255, 256
 - Product
 - BSC 2780/3780 features 41
 - BSC 3270 features 35
 - features 28
 - introduction 25
 - overview 25
 - support 23
 - Programs
 - test 237
 - Protocol
 - BSC 2780/3780 implementation 38
 - BSC 3270 implementation 33
 - Protocol option 90, 161
 - Protocol processing 243
 - attach sessions 243
 - header format 247
 - BSC3270 device
 - header format 253
 - data transfer 244
 - header format 256
 - detach session
 - header format 248
 - detach sessions 245
 - disable link (unbind) 245
 - header format 250
 - enable link (bind) 244
 - header format 249
 - general commands
 - header format 252, 254
 - general responses
 - header format 252, 254
 - link configuration 244
 - set buffer size 244
 - header format 251
 - translation table
 - header format 255
 - Protocol summary of BSC 33
- Q
- Queue flush command 130
 - Queue limit option 100, 175
- R
- Raw operation 47, 54, 55, 107, 114, 115, 243
 - Read mode 36, 43
 - Read session option 101, 177
 - Record handling 38, 39, 174
 - splitting 174
 - Reference documents 19
 - Reply timer length option 90, 160, 166
 - Reports
 - BSC 3270 poll list 76
 - buffer 71, 140
 - configuration 72, 141
 - DSR/DCD up/down/DCD signal 206, 224
 - error 83, 154
 - line up/down 196
 - software version ID 75, 146
 - station up/down 206
 - statistics 72, 141
 - status 73, 142
 - last event codes 145
 - translation table 75, 144
 - virtual 3270 device status 76
 - Response codes
 - BSC 2780/3780 table of codes 151
 - BSC 3270 table of codes 81
 - DLI_ICP_CMD_ATTACH
 - header format 247
 - DLI_ICP_CMD_BIND
 - header format 249
 - DLI_ICP_CMD_DETACH
 - header format 248
 - DLI_ICP_CMD_UNBIND
 - header format 250
 - DLI_PROT_CHANGE_STATUS

- header format 253
- DLI_PROT_CREATE_DEVICE
 - header format 253
- DLI_PROT_FLUSH_QUEUE 130
- DLI_PROT_GET_DEVICE_STATUS 76
- DLI_PROT_GET_LINK_CFG 141
- DLI_PROT_GET_POLL_LIST 76
- DLI_PROT_GET_SOFTWARE_VER 75, 146
- DLI_PROT_GET_STATISTICS_REPORT 14
 - 1
- DLI_PROT_GET_STATUS_REPORT 142
- DLI_PROT_GET_TRANS_TABLE 144
- DLI_PROT_MODEM_CFG 134
- DLI_PROT_RESP_BIND_ACK 61, 121, 211
- DLI_PROT_RESP_ERROR 83, 154, 194, 196, 206, 207, 224, 233
 - see also Error codes
- DLI_PROT_RESP_LOCAL_ACK 78, 94, 126, 128, 130, 146, 167, 179, 180, 195, 196, 206, 233
 - header format 256
- DLI_PROT_RESP_UNBIND_ACK 62, 122, 223
- DLI_PROT_SEND_DISC 125, 126
- DLI_PROT_SEND_EOT 67, 125
- DLI_PROT_SEND_SIGNON 127
- DLI_PROT_SET_BUF_SIZE
 - header format 251
- DLI_PROT_SET_TRANS_TABLE
 - header format 255
- DLI_PROT_START_AUTODIAL 131
- DLI_PROT_START_LINK_TRACE 136
- DLI_PROT_STOP_LINK_TRACE 136
- receive data
 - header format 257
- signon 212
- trace data 136
- trace event numbers 138
- trace start 136
- trace stop 136
- Response header summary 246
- Responses
 - general header format 252, 254
 - header format 243, 257
- Retry limit example 221
- Retry limit option 94, 167
- Revision history 22
- RJE 38
- rlogin 28
- RTS signal 95, 169, 207, 225
- RVI 149, 195
- RVI handling 177, 202, 218
- RVI handling option 179
- S
- Safe store
 - acknowledge 64, 123, 179
 - control stations 65
 - tributary stations 66
- Safe store option 96, 170
- Send disconnect 125, 127, 128, 177
- Send EOT 64, 66, 67, 94, 124, 127, 167, 177
- Send EOT command 125
- Sense/status message 83, 204
- Server processor 26
- Session
 - attach 243
 - closing 31
 - configuration 188
 - detach 245
 - opening 31
- Set buffer size command
 - header format 251
- Signon command 126, 212
- SNMP 28
- Software
 - components 32
 - download 30
- Software version ID 75, 146
- Space compression option 166
- Specific poll 66, 195
- Start link
 - see dlWrite categories, commands
- Start link command 60, 121
- Station
 - control station
 - operation 34
 - procedures 193
 - safe store 65
 - tributary station

- operation [34](#)
- procedures [195](#)
- safe store [66](#)
- up/down reporting [101](#)
- up/down reporting [206](#)
- Station ID option [97](#)
- Station priority option [93](#), [166](#)
- Statistics
 - clear [57](#), [118](#)
 - report [72](#), [141](#)
- Status message format [102](#)
- Status report [73](#), [142](#)
- Stop link
 - see* dlWrite categories, commands
- Stop link command [61](#), [122](#)
- Summary
 - command header [246](#)
 - response header [246](#)
- Support, product [23](#)

T

- TCP/IP [28](#)
 - package [184](#)
 - VMS package [239](#)
- Technical support [23](#)
- telnet [28](#)
- Test mode [196](#)
- Test programs [237](#)
- Trace access mode [43](#)
- Trace commands and responses [136](#)
- Translation table command
 - header format [255](#)
- Translation tables
 - ASCII-to-EBCDIC [228](#), [230](#)
 - EBCDIC-to-ASCII [229](#), [231](#)
 - report [75](#), [144](#)
 - set [57](#), [118](#)
- Translation, data [93](#), [165](#)
- Transmission
 - blocks [35](#), [40](#), [217](#)
 - codes [34](#), [40](#)
- Transmission block size option [92](#), [154](#), [164](#)
- Transmit data command
 - header format [256](#)
- Transparent data [79](#), [147](#)

- Transport subsystem interface (TSI) [30](#)
- Tributary station
 - see* Station
- TSI configuration
 - see* Configuration, TSI
- tsicfg preprocessor program [184](#)
- TTD/WACK limit option [181](#)
- TTD/WACK option [177](#), [178](#)

U

- UNIX
 - configuration process [184](#)
 - loopback test [237](#), [238](#)

V

- Virtual 3270 device
 - status [76](#)
- Virtual 3270 devices
 - create [67](#), [69](#)
- Virtual device
 - command checking [200](#)
 - display [197](#)
 - printer [197](#)
 - procedures [197](#)
 - sense/status message [204](#)
- VMS
 - configuration process [184](#)
 - loopback test [237](#), [238](#)
 - TCP/IP package [239](#)
- VxWorks [26](#)

W

- WACK [65](#), [66](#), [95](#), [167](#), [203](#)
- Windows NT
 - configuration process [184](#)
 - loopback test [237](#), [238](#)
- writeType DLI parameter [48](#), [108](#), [115](#)

Customer Report Form

We are constantly improving our products. If you have suggestions or problems you would like to report regarding the hardware, software or documentation, please complete this form and mail it to Protogate at 12225 World Trade Drive, Suite R, San Diego, CA 92128, or fax it to (877) 473-0190.

If you are reporting errors in the documentation, please enter the section and page number.

Your Name: _____

Company: _____

Address: _____

Phone Number: _____

Product: _____

Problem or
Suggestion: _____

Protogate, Inc.
Customer Service
12225 World Trade Drive, Suite R
San Diego, CA 92128